

WhiteboxTools User Manual

John B. Lindsay, PhD, University of Guelph

Contents

1.	Introduction	11
2.	Downloads and Installation	12
	Supported Data Formats	
4.	Interacting With WhiteboxTools From the Command Prompt	13
5.	Interacting With WhiteboxTools Through Python Scripting	
	5.1 Using the whitebox_tools.py Script	
	5.2 An Example WhiteboxTools Python Project	
6.	WhiteboxTools Runner	23
6.	Available Tools	23
	7.1 Data Tools	26
	7.1.1 ConvertNodataToZero	26
	7.1.2 ConvertRasterFormat	26
	7.1.3 NewRasterFromBase	
	7.1.4 PrintGeoTiffTags	27
	7.1.5 SetNodataValue	28
	7.2 GIS Analysis	29
	7.2.1 AggregateRaster	29
	7.2.2 Centroid	29
	7.2.3 Clump	30
	7.2.4 CreatePlane	31
	7.2.5 RasterCellAssignment	31
	7.2.6 Reclass	32
	7.2.7 ReclassEqualInterval	33
	7.2.8 ReclassFromFile	33
	7.3 GIS Analysis => Distance Tools	34
	7.3.1 BufferRaster	34
	7.3.2 CostAllocation	35
	7.3.3 CostDistance	35
	7.3.4 CostPathway	36
	7.3.5 EuclideanAllocation	36
	7.3.6 EuclideanDistance	37
	7.4 GIS Analysis => Overlay Tools	38
	7.4.1 AverageOverlay	38
	7.4.2 ErasePolygonFromRaster	38
	7.4.3 HighestPosition	39

7.4.4 LowestPosition	٠	٠	 ٠	 •	 •	 	•	 •	 •	39
7.4.5 MaxAbsoluteOverlay						 				40
7.4.6 MaxOverlay						 				40
7.4.7 MinAbsoluteOverlay						 				41
7.4.8 MinOverlay						 				41
7.4.9 PercentEqualTo						 				42
7.4.10 PercentGreaterThan						 				42
7.4.11 PercentLessThan						 				43
7.4.12 PickFromList										
7.4.13 WeightedSum						 				44
7.5 GIS Analysis => Patch Shape Tools										
7.5.1 EdgeProportion						 				45
7.5.2 FindPatchOrClassEdgeCells						 				45
7.5.3 RadiusOfGyration						 				46
7.6 Geomorphometric Analysis						 				46
7.6.1 Aspect						 				46
7.6.2 DevFromMeanElev						 				47
7.6.3 DiffFromMeanElev						 				48
7.6.4 DirectionalRelief						 				48
7.6.5 DownslopeIndex						 				49
7.6.6 ElevAbovePit						 				50
7.6.7 ElevPercentile						 				50
7.6.8 ElevRelativeToMinMax						 				51
7.6.9 ElevRelativeToWatershedMinMax						 				51
7.6.10 FeaturePreservingDenoise						 				52
7.6.11 FetchAnalysis						 				53
7.6.12 FillMissingData						 				53
7.6.13 FindRidges						 				54
7.6.14 Hillshade						 				54
7.6.15 HorizonAngle						 				55
7.6.16 HypsometricAnalysis						 				56
7.6.17 MaxAnisotropyDev						 				56
7.6.18 MaxAnisotropyDevSignature						 				57
7.6.19 MaxBranchLength						 				58
7.6.20 MaxDownslopeElevChange						 				58
7.6.21 MaxElevDevSignature						 				59
7.6.22 MaxElevationDeviation						 				59
7.6.23 MinDownslopeElevChange						 				60
7.6.24 MultiscaleRoughness						 				61
7.6.25 MultiscaleRoughnessSignature						 				61
7.6.26 MultiscaleTopographicPositionImage						 				62
7.6.27 NumDownslopeNeighbours						 				63
7.6.28 NumUpslopeNeighbours										
7.6.29 PennockLandformClass										
7 6 30 PercentFlevRange										65

7.6.31 PlanCurvature	 	 		 	•		 	•	•	65
7.6.32 Profile	 	 		 			 			66
7.6.33 ProfileCurvature	 	 		 			 			66
7.6.34 RelativeAspect	 	 		 			 			67
7.6.35 RelativeStreamPowerIndex	 	 		 			 			68
7.6.36 RelativeTopographicPosition	 	 		 			 			68
7.6.37 RemoveOffTerrainObjects	 	 		 			 			69
7.6.38 RuggednessIndex	 	 		 			 			69
7.6.39 SedimentTransportIndex	 	 		 			 			70
7.6.40 Slope	 	 		 			 			71
7.6.41 SlopeVsElevationPlot	 	 		 			 			71
7.6.42 TangentialCurvature	 	 		 			 			72
7.6.43 TotalCurvature	 	 		 			 			72
7.6.44 Viewshed	 	 		 			 			73
7.6.45 WetnessIndex	 	 		 			 			74
7.7 Hydrological Analysis	 	 		 			 			74
7.7.1 AverageFlowpathSlope	 	 		 			 			74
7.7.2 AverageUpslopeFlowpathLength .	 	 		 			 			75
7.7.3 Basins	 	 		 			 			75
7.7.4 BreachDepressions	 	 		 			 			76
7.7.5 BreachSingleCellPits	 	 		 			 			76
7.7.6 D8FlowAccumulation	 	 		 			 			77
7.7.7 D8MassFlux	 	 		 			 			78
7.7.8 D8Pointer	 	 		 			 			78
7.7.9 DInfFlowAccumulation	 	 		 			 			79
7.7.10 DInfMassFlux	 	 		 			 			80
7.7.11 DInfPointer	 	 		 			 			80
7.7.12 DepthInSink	 	 		 			 			81
7.7.13 DownslopeDistanceToStream	 	 		 			 			82
7.7.14 DownslopeFlowpathLength	 	 		 			 			82
7.7.15 ElevationAboveStream	 	 		 			 			83
7.7.16 ElevationAboveStreamEuclidean	 	 		 			 			83
7.7.17 FD8FlowAccumulation	 	 		 			 			84
7.7.18 FD8Pointer	 	 		 			 			85
7.7.19 FillBurn	 	 		 			 			85
7.7.20 FillDepressions	 	 		 			 			86
7.7.21 FillSingleCellPits	 	 		 			 			87
7.7.22 FindNoFlowCells	 	 		 			 			87
7.7.23 FindParallelFlow	 	 		 			 			88
7.7.24 FlattenLakes	 	 		 			 			88
7.7.25 FloodOrder	 	 		 			 			89
7.7.26 FlowAccumulationFullWorkflow .	 	 		 			 			89
7.7.27 FlowLengthDiff	 	 		 			 			90
7.7.28 Hillslopes	 	 		 			 			91
7.7.29 Isobasins	 	 		 						91

7.7.30 JensonSnapPourPoints
7.7.30 Jensonshaprourroints
7.7.31 MaxopsioperiowpathLength
7.7.33 Rho8Pointer
7.7.33 Kiloopointei
7.7.34 Sirik
7.7.36 StrahlerOrderBasins
7.7.37 Subbasins
7.7.38 TraceDownslopeFlowpaths
7.7.39 Watershed
7.8 Image Processing Tools
7.8.1 Closing
7.8.2 CreateColourComposite
7.8.3 FlipImage
7.8.4 IhsToRgb
7.8.5 ImageStackProfile
7.8.6 Integrallmage
7.8.7 KMeansClustering
7.8.8 LineThinning
7.8.9 ModifiedKMeansClustering
7.8.10 Mosaic
7.8.11 NormalizedDifferenceVegetationIndex
7.8.12 Opening
7.8.13 PrincipalComponentAnalysis
7.8.14 RemoveSpurs
7.8.15 Resample
7.8.16 RgbToIhs
7.8.17 SplitColourComposite
7.8.18 ThickenRasterLine
7.8.19 TophatTransform
7.8.20 WriteFunctionMemoryInsertion
7.9 Image Processing Tools => Filters
7.9.1 AdaptiveFilter
7.9.2 BilateralFilter
7.9.3 ConservativeSmoothingFilter
7.9.4 DiffOfGaussianFilter
7.9.5 DiversityFilter
7.9.6 EdgePreservingMeanFilter
7.9.7 EmbossFilter
7.9.8 GaussianFilter
7.9.9 HighPassFilter
7.9.10 KNearestMeanFilter
7.9.11 LaplacianFilter
7.9.12 LaplacianOfGaussianFilter
7.9.13 LeeFilter

| 7.9.15 MajorityFilter

 | 7.9.14 LineDetectionFilter | . 120 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

--
---|--|-------|--|----------------------|-------|--|-------------------|-------|---|---------------------|-------|---|----------------------|-------
---|----------------------|-------|---|-------------------------|-------|--|----------------------|-------|---|--------------------|-------|---|---------------------------|-------|--|---------------------|-------|--|--------------------|-------|--|--------------------------------|-------
--|--------------------|-------|---|--|-------|--|-----------------------------------|-------|---|-----------------------------------|-------|--|------------------------|-------|---|------------------------------|-------|---|--------------------------|-------|--|-----------------------------------|-------|---|------------------------------|-------
--|-------------------------------|-------|--|----------------------------------|-------|---|----------------------------------|-------|--|--|-------|--|------------------|-------|--|---------------------|-------|---|---------------------|-------|---|------------------------------|-------|--|---------------------------------|-------|--|--------------------------|-------|--|-------------------|-------|---|-----------------------|-------|---|----------------------------|-------|--|-------------------------------|-------|---|------------------------|-------|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|-------------------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-------|--|-------------------------|-------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| 7.9.17 MeanFilter 122 7.9.18 MedianFilter 122 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammacCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 138 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.1 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3 FilightlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 <tr <="" td=""><td>7.9.15 MajorityFilter</td><td>. 121</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.18 MedianFilter 122 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.1 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.1 IslandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3</td><td>7.9.16 MaximumFilter</td><td>. 121</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 FlightlineCoerlap 139 7.11.5 LidarKoscii 139<</td><td>7.9.17 MeanFilter</td><td>. 122</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Wolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 LidarFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarF</td><td>7.9.18 MedianFilter</td><td>. 122</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching TwoImages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.6 LasToAsci 139 7.11.1 LidarHilsbade<</td><td>7.9.19 MinimumFilter</td><td>. 123</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1.8 Lida</td><td>7.9.20 OlympicFilter</td><td>. 124</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 DalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LIDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.5 FilghtlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.1 LidarBicatievationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarGroundPointFilter 141</td><td>7.9.21 PercentileFilter</td><td>. 124</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 <t< td=""><td>7.9.22 PrewittFilter</td><td>. 125</td></t<></td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3
GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141<!--</td--><td>7.9.23 RangeFilter</td><td>. 125</td></td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 144</td><td>7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter</td><td>. 126</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144</td><td>7.9.25 ScharrFilter</td><td>. 127</td></tr> <tr><td>7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144</td><td>7.9.26 SobelFilter</td><td>. 127</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.11 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.15 LidarKappalndex 146 <t< td=""><td>7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter</td><td>. 128</td></t<></td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.9.28 TotalFilter</td><td>. 128</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 Lidarldwinterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement</td><td>. 129</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarFlishade 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.5 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement</td><td>. 129</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14
LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch</td><td>. 130</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.3 GammaCorrection</td><td>. 130</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.4 HistogramEqualization</td><td>. 131</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.5 HistogramMatching</td><td>. 131</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwoImages</td><td>. 132</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch</td><td>. 133</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening</td><td>. 133</td></tr> <tr><td>7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch</td><td>. 134</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch</td><td>. 135</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch</td><td>. 136</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11 LiDAR Tools</td><td>. 136</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.1 BlockMaximum</td><td>. 136</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6
LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.2 BlockMinimum</td><td>. 137</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles</td><td>. 138</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints</td><td>. 138</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap</td><td>. 139</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.6 LasToAscii</td><td>. 139</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.7 LidarColourize</td><td>. 140</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice</td><td>. 140</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter</td><td>. 141</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146</td><td>7.11.10 LidarHillshade</td><td>. 142</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.13 LidarInfo </td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.14 LidarJoin </td><td>7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation</td><td>. 143</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex</td><td>7.11.13 LidarInfo</td><td>. 144</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding</td><td>7.11.14 LidarJoin</td><td>. 145</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7.11.15 LidarKappalndex</td><td>. 146</td></tr> <tr><td>7 11 17 Lidar Point Donsity</td><td>7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding</td><td>. 146</td></tr> <tr><td>7.11.17 Liuarroiiiliberisity</td><td>7.11.17 LidarPointDensity</td><td>. 147</td></tr> | 7.9.15 MajorityFilter | . 121 | 7.9.18 MedianFilter 122 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.1 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.1 IslandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3 | 7.9.16 MaximumFilter | . 121 | 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 FlightlineCoerlap 139 7.11.5 LidarKoscii 139< | 7.9.17 MeanFilter | . 122 | 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Wolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 LidarFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarF | 7.9.18 MedianFilter | . 122 | 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching TwoImages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.6 LasToAsci 139 7.11.1 LidarHilsbade< | 7.9.19 MinimumFilter | . 123 | 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10
SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1.8 Lida | 7.9.20 OlympicFilter | . 124 | 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 DalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LIDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.5 FilghtlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.1 LidarBicatievationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 | 7.9.21 PercentileFilter | . 124 | 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 <t< td=""><td>7.9.22 PrewittFilter</td><td>. 125</td></t<> | 7.9.22 PrewittFilter | . 125 | 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 </td <td>7.9.23 RangeFilter</td> <td>. 125</td> | 7.9.23 RangeFilter | . 125 | 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 144 | 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter | . 126 | 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144 | 7.9.25 ScharrFilter | . 127 | 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144 | 7.9.26 SobelFilter | . 127 | 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.11 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.15 LidarKappalndex 146 <t< td=""><td>7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter</td><td>. 128</td></t<> | 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter | . 128 | 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.9.28 TotalFilter | . 128 | 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3
GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 Lidarldwinterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement | . 129 | 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarFlishade 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.5 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement | . 129 | 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch | . 130 | 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.3 GammaCorrection | . 130 | 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization | . 131 | 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.5 HistogramMatching | . 131 | 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwoImages | . 132 | 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch | . 133 | 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening | . 133 | 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch | . 134 | 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3
FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch | . 135 | 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch | . 136 | 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11 LiDAR Tools | . 136 | 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.1 BlockMaximum | . 136 | 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.2 BlockMinimum | . 137 | 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles | . 138 | 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints | . 138 | 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap | . 139 | 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.6 LasToAscii | . 139 | 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.7 LidarColourize | . 140 | 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice | . 140 | 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter | . 141 | 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146 | 7.11.10 LidarHillshade | . 142 | 7.11.13 LidarInfo | | | 7.11.14 LidarJoin | 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation | . 143 | 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex | 7.11.13 LidarInfo | . 144 | 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding | 7.11.14 LidarJoin | . 145 | | 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex | . 146 | 7 11 17 Lidar Point Donsity | 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding | . 146 | 7.11.17 Liuarroiiiliberisity | 7.11.17 LidarPointDensity | . 147 |
| 7.9.15 MajorityFilter

 | . 121 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.18 MedianFilter 122 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.1 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.1 IslandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3

 | 7.9.16 MaximumFilter | . 121 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.19 MinimumFilter 123 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 FlightlineCoerlap 139 7.11.5 LidarKoscii 139<

 | 7.9.17 MeanFilter | . 122 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.20 OlympicFilter 124 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Wolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 LidarFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarF

 | 7.9.18 MedianFilter | . 122 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.21 PercentileFilter 124 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching TwoImages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.6 LasToAsci 139 7.11.1 LidarHilsbade<

 | 7.9.19 MinimumFilter | . 123 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.22 PrewittFilter 125 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.1 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1.8 Lida

 | 7.9.20 OlympicFilter | . 124 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.23 RangeFilter 125 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 DalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching Twolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LIDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.5 FilghtlineOverlap 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.1 LidarBicatievationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarGroundPointFilter 141

 | 7.9.21 PercentileFilter | . 124 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter 126 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 <t< td=""><td>7.9.22 PrewittFilter</td><td>. 125</td></t<>

 | 7.9.22 PrewittFilter | . 125 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.25 ScharrFilter 127 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10.1 Mage Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarGolourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 </td <td>7.9.23 RangeFilter</td> <td>. 125</td>

 | 7.9.23 RangeFilter | . 125 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.26 SobelFilter 127 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarFlevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHilshade 144

 | 7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter | . 126 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter 128 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 134 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144

 | 7.9.25 ScharrFilter | . 127 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.9.28 TotalFilter 128 7.10 Image Processing Tools ⇒ Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 144

 | 7.9.26 SobelFilter | . 127 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement 129 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.11 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.15 LidarKappalndex 146 <t< td=""><td>7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter</td><td>. 128</td></t<>

 | 7.9.27 StandardDeviationFilter | . 128 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement 129 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.9.28 TotalFilter | . 128 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch 130 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 Lidarldwinterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement | . 129 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.3 GammaCorrection 130 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.1 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.1 LidarFlishade 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1.5 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement | . 129 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization 131 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.5 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHilshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch | . 130 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.5 HistogramMatching 131 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarInfo 144 7.11.1 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.3 GammaCorrection | . 130 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwolmages 132 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.4 HistogramEqualization | . 131 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch 133 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.5 HistogramMatching | . 131 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening 133 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwoImages | . 132 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch 134 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch | . 133 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch 135 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.111 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening | . 133 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch 136 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch | . 134 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11 LiDAR Tools 136 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch | . 135 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.1 BlockMaximum 136 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch | . 136 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.2 BlockMinimum 137 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11 LiDAR Tools | . 136 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles 138 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.1 BlockMaximum | . 136 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints 138 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.2 BlockMinimum | . 137 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap 139 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles | . 138 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.6 LasToAscii 139 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints | . 138 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.7 LidarColourize 140 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap | . 139 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice 140 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.6 LasToAscii | . 139 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter 141 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.7 LidarColourize | . 140 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.10 LidarHillshade 142 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice | . 140 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.11 LidarHistogram 143 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter | . 141 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation 143 7.11.13 LidarInfo 144 7.11.14 LidarJoin 145 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex 146 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding 146

 | 7.11.10 LidarHillshade | . 142 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.13 LidarInfo

 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.14 LidarJoin

 | 7.11.12 LidarldwInterpolation | . 143 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex

 | 7.11.13 LidarInfo | . 144 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding

 | 7.11.14 LidarJoin | . 145 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|

 | 7.11.15 LidarKappalndex | . 146 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 11 17 Lidar Point Donsity

 | 7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding | . 146 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7.11.17 Liuarroiiiliberisity

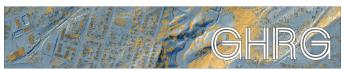
 | 7.11.17 LidarPointDensity | . 147 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

7.11.18 LidarPointStats	148
7.11.19 LidarRemoveDuplicates	149
7.11.20 LidarRemoveOutliers	150
7.11.21 LidarSegmentation	150
7.11.22 LidarSegmentationBasedFilter	151
7.11.23 LidarTile	152
7.11.24 LidarTophatTransform	152
7.11.25 NormalVectors	153
7.12 Math and Stats Tools	154
7.12.1 AbsoluteValue	154
7.12.2 Add	154
7.12.3 And	155
7.12.4 Anova	155
7.12.5 ArcCos	156
7.12.6 ArcSin	156
7.12.7 ArcTan	157
7.12.8 Atan2	157
7.12.9 Ceil	158
7.12.10 Cos	158
7.12.11 Cosh	159
7.12.12 CrispnessIndex	159
7.12.13 CrossTabulation	160
7.12.14 CumulativeDistribution	161
7.12.15 Decrement	161
7.12.16 Divide	162
7.12.17 EqualTo	162
7.12.18 Exp	163
7.12.19 Exp2	163
7.12.20 ExtractRasterStatistics	164
7.12.21 Floor	164
7.12.22 GreaterThan	165
7.12.23 ImageAutocorrelation	166
7.12.24 ImageCorrelation	166
7.12.25 ImageRegression	167
7.12.26 InPlaceAdd	167
7.12.27 InPlaceDivide	168
7.12.28 InPlaceMultiply	169
7.12.29 InPlaceSubtract	169
7.12.30 Increment	170
7.12.31 IntegerDivision	170
7.12.32 IsNoData	171
7.12.33 KSTestForNormality	171
7.12.34 Kappalndex	172
7.12.35 LessThan	173
7 12 26 Lp	172

	7.12.37 Log10			 		 					174
	7.12.38 Log2			 		 					174
	7.12.39 Max			 		 					175
	7.12.40 Min			 		 					175
	7.12.41 Modulo			 		 					176
	7.12.42 Multiply			 		 					176
	7.12.43 Negate			 		 					177
	7.12.44 Not			 		 					178
	7.12.45 NotEqualTo			 		 					178
	7.12.46 Or			 		 					179
	7.12.47 Power			 		 					179
	7.12.48 Quantiles			 		 					180
	7.12.49 RandomField			 		 					180
	7.12.50 RandomSample			 		 					181
	7.12.51 RasterHistogram			 		 					181
	7.12.52 RasterSummaryStats			 		 					182
	7.12.53 Reciprocal			 		 					182
	7.12.54 RescaleValueRange			 		 					183
	7.12.55 RootMeanSquareError			 		 					184
	7.12.56 Round			 		 					184
	7.12.57 Sin			 		 					185
	7.12.58 Sinh			 		 					185
	7.12.59 Square			 		 					186
	7.12.60 SquareRoot			 		 					186
	7.12.61 Subtract			 		 					187
	7.12.62 Tan			 		 					187
	7.12.63 Tanh			 		 					188
	7.12.64 ToDegrees			 		 					188
	7.12.65 ToRadians			 		 					189
	7.12.66 Truncate			 		 					189
	7.12.67 TurningBandsSimulation .			 		 					190
	7.12.68 Xor			 		 					191
	7.12.69 ZScores			 		 					191
7.13 St	ream Network Analysis			 		 					192
	7.13.1 DistanceToOutlet										
	7.13.2 ExtractStreams			 		 					192
	7.13.3 ExtractValleys			 		 					193
	7.13.4 FarthestChannelHead			 		 					194
	7.13.5 FindMainStem			 		 					195
	7.13.6 HackStreamOrder			 		 					195
	7.13.7 HortonStreamOrder										
	7.13.8 LengthOfUpstreamChannels	5		 		 					197
	7.13.9 LongProfile										
	7.13.10 LongProfileFromPoints .										
	7.13.11 RasterizeStreams										

7.13.12 RemoveShortStreams
7.13.13 ShreveStreamMagnitude
7.13.14 StrahlerStreamOrder
7.13.15 StreamLinkClass
7.13.16 StreamLinkldentifier
7.13.17 StreamLinkLength
7.13.18 StreamLinkSlope
7.13.19 StreamSlopeContinuous
7.13.20 TopologicalStreamOrder
7.13.21 Tributaryldentifier
8. Contributing
9. Reporting Bugs
10. Known Issues and Limitations
11. License
12. Frequently Asked Questions
12.1 Do I need Whitebox GAT to use WhiteboxTools?
12.2 How do I request a tool be added?
12.3 Can WhiteboxTools be incorporated into other software and open-source GIS projects? 209
12.4 What platforms does WhiteboxTools support?
12.5 What are the system requirements?
12.6 Are pre-compiled executables of WhiteboxTools available?
12.7 Why is WhiteboxTools programmed in Rust?
12.8 Do I need Rust installed on my computer to run WhiteboxTools?
12.9 How does WhiteboxTools' design philosophy differ?

WhiteboxTools Version 0.6
Dr. John B. Lindsay © 2017-2018
Geomorphometry and Hydrogeomatics Research Group University of Guelph
Guelph, Canada
April 3, 2018



Geomorphometry & Hydrogeomatics Research Group

1. Introduction

WhiteboxTools is an advanced geospatial data analysis platform developed by Prof. John Lindsay (webpage; jblindsay) at the University of Guelph's Geomorphometry and Hydrogeomatics Research Group (GHRG). The project began in January 2017 and quickly evolved in terms of its analytical capabilities. WhiteboxTools can be used to perform common geographical information systems (GIS) analysis operations, such as cost-distance analysis, distance buffering, and raster reclassification. Remote sensing and image processing tasks include image enhancement (e.g. panchromatic sharpening, contrast adjustments), image mosaicking, numerous filtering operations, simple classification (k-means clustering), and common image transformations. WhiteboxTools also contains advanced tooling for spatial hydrological analysis (e.g. flow-accumulation, watershed delineation, stream network analysis, sink removal), terrain analysis (e.g. common terrain indices such as slope, curvatures, wetness index, hillshading; hypsometric analysis; multi-scale topographic position analysis), and LiDAR data processing. LiDAR point clouds can be interrogated (LidarInfo, LidarHistogram), segmented, tiled and joined, analyzed for outliers, interpolated to rasters (DEMs, intensity images), and ground-points can be classified or filtered. WhiteboxTools is not a cartographic or spatial data visualization package; instead it is meant to serve as an analytical backend for other data visualization software, mainly GIS.

In this manual, *WhiteboxTools* refers to the standalone geospatial analysis library, a collection of tools contained within a compiled binary executable command-line program and the associated Python scripts that are distributed alongside the binary file (e.g. *whitebox_tools.py* and *wb_runner.py*). *Whitebox Geospatial Analysis Tools* and *Whitebox GAT* refer to the GIS software, which includes a user-interface (front-end), point-and-click tool interfaces, and cartographic data visualization capabilities.

Although WhiteboxTools was first developed with to serve as a source of plugin tools for the Whitebox Geospatial Analysis Tools (GAT) open-source GIS project, the tools contained in the library are stand-alone and can run outside of the larger Whitebox GAT project. See Interacting With WhiteboxTools From the Command Prompt for further details. There have been a large number of requests to call Whitebox GAT tools and functionality from outside of the Whitebox GAT user-interface (e.g. from Python automation scripts). WhiteboxTools is intended to meet these usage requirements. For example, a WhiteboxTools plug-in for QGIS is available.

The current version of *Whitebox GAT* contains many equivelent tools to those found in the *WhiteboxTools* library, although they are developed using the Java programming language. A future version of *Whitebox GAT* will replace these previous tools with the new *WhiteboxTools* backend. This transition will occur over the next several releases. Eventually most of the approximately 450 tools contained within *Whitebox GAT* will be ported to *WhiteboxTools*. In addition to separating the processing capabilities and the user-interface (and thereby reducing the reliance on Java), this migration should significantly improve processing efficiency. This is because Rust, the programming language used to develop *WhiteboxTools*, is generally faster than the equivalent Java code and because many of the *WhiteboxTools* functions are designed to process data in parallel wherever possible. In contrast, the older Java codebase included largely single-threaded applications.

In addition to Whitebox GAT, the WhiteboxTools project is related to other GHRG software projects includ-

ing, the *GoSpatial* project, which has similar goals but is designed using the Go programming language instead of Rust. *WhiteboxTools* has however superseded the *GoSpatial* project, having subsumed all of its functionality. *GoSpatial* users should now transition to *WhiteboxTools*.

2. Downloads and Installation

WhiteboxTools is a stand-alone executable command-line program with no actual installation. Simply download the appropriate file for your system and decompress the folder. Pre-compiled binaries can be downloaded from the *Geomorphometry and Hydrogeomatics Research Group* software web site for various supported operating systems. Depending on your operating system, you may need to grant the *WhiteboxTools* executable file execution privileges before running it. If you intend to use the Python programming interface for *WhiteboxTools* you will need to have Python 3 installed.

It is likely that *WhiteboxTools* will work on a wider variety of operating systems and architectures than those of the distributed pre-compiled binaries. If you do not find your operating system/architecture in the list of available *WhiteboxTool* binaries, then compilation from source code will be necessary. WhiteboxTools can be compiled from the source code with the following steps:

- 1. Install the Rust compiler; Rustup is recommended for this purpose. Further instruction can be found at this link.
- 2. Download the *Whitebox GAT* source code. Note: *WhiteboxTools* is currently housed as a subrepository of the main *Whitebox GAT* repo. To download the code, click the green Clone or download button on the GitHub repository site.
- 3. Decompress the zipped download file.
- 4. Open a terminal (command prompt) window and change the working directory to the white-box_tools sub-folder, which is contained within the decompressed downloaded Whitebox GAT folder:
- >> cd /path/to/folder/whitebox_tools/
 - 5. Finally, use the rust package manager Cargo, which will be installed alongside Rust, to compile the executable:
- >> cargo build --release

Depending on your system, the compilation may take several minutes. When completed, the compiled binary executable file will be contained within the *whitebox_tools/target/release/ folder*. Type ./whitebox_tools --help at the command prompt (after changing the directory to the containing folder) for information on how to run the executable from the terminal.

The '>>' is shorthand used in this document to denote the command prompt and is not intended to be typed.

Be sure to follow the instructions for installing Rust carefully. In particular, if you are installing on Microsoft Windows, you must have a linker installed prior to installing the Rust compiler (*rustc*). The Rust webpage recommends either the **MS Visual C++ 2015 Build Tools** or the GNU equivalent and offers details for each installation approach. You should also consider using **RustUp** to install the Rust compiler.

3. Supported Data Formats

The WhiteboxTools library can currently support reading/writing raster data in GeoTIFF (.tif), Whitebox GAT(.tas and .dep), ESRI (ArcGIS) ASCII (.txt) and binary (.flt and .hdr), GRASS GIS, Idrisi (.rdc and .rst), SAGA GIS (binary-.sdat and .sgrd-and ASCII formats), and Surfer 7 (.grd) data formats. LZW compression of GeoTIFF files is not currently supported. The library is primarily tested using Whitebox and GeoTIFF raster data sets and if you encounter issues when reading/writing data in other formats, you should report the issue. Please note that there are no plans to incorporate third-party libraries, like GDAL, in the project given the design goal of keeping a pure (or as close as possible) Rust codebase without third-party dependencies.

Please note that throughout this manual code examples that manipulate raster files all use the GeoTIFF format (.tif) but any of the supported file extensions can be used in its place.

At present, there is limited ability in *WhiteboxTools* to read vector geospatial data. Support for Shape-file (and other common vector formats) will be enhanced within the library soon. Currently Shapefile geometries can be read and certain tools take vector inputs. Reading vector attributes and writing vector geometries and attributes will be added a future version of the library.

LiDAR data can be read/written in the common LAS data format. WhiteboxTools can read and write LAS files that have been compressed (zipped with a .zip extension) using the common DEFLATE algorithm. Note that only LAS file should be contained within a zipped archive file. The compressed LiDAR format LAZ and ESRI LiDAR format are not currently supported by the library. The following is an example of running a LiDAR tool using zipped input/output files:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarTophatTransform -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las.zip" -o="output.las.zip" --radius=10.0
```

Note that the double extensions (.las.zip) in the above command are not necessary and are only used for convenience of keeping track of LiDAR data sets (i.e. .zip extensions work too). The extra work of decoding/encoding compressed files does add additional processing time, although the Rust compression library that is used is highly efficient and usually only adds a few seconds to tool run times. Zipping LAS files frequently results 40-60% smaller binary files, making the additional processing time worthwhile for larger LAS file data sets with massive storage requirements.

4. Interacting With WhiteboxTools From the Command Prompt

WhiteboxTools is a command-line program and can be run either by calling it from a terminal application with appropriate commands and arguments, or, more conveniently, by calling it from a script. The follow-

ing commands are re	ecognized by the	<i>WhiteboxTools</i> library:
ing communas are re	CCOSINZCO DY LIIC	William V.

Command	Description
cd,wd	Changes the working directory; used in conjunction withrun flag.
-h,help	Prints help information.
-l,license	Prints the whitebox-tools license.
listtools	Lists all available tools, with tool descriptions. Keywords may also be
	used,listtools slope.
-r,run	Runs a tool; used in conjunction withcd flag; -r="LidarInfo".
toolbox	Prints the toolbox associated with a tool;toolbox=Slope.
toolhelp	Prints the help associated with a tool;toolhelp="LidarInfo".
toolparameters	Prints the parameters (in json form) for a specific tool;
·	e.gtoolparameters="FeaturePreservingDenoise".
-V	Verbose mode. Without this flag, tool outputs will not be printed.
viewcode	Opens the source code of a tool in a web browser;viewcode="LidarInfo".
version	Prints the version information.

Generally, the Unix convention is that single-letter arguments (options) use a single hyphen (e.g. -h) while word-arguments (longer, more descriptive argument names) use double hyphens (e.g. --help). The same rule is used for passing arguments to tools as well. Use the --toolhelp argument to print information about a specific tool (e.g. --toolhelp=Clump).

Tool names can be specified either using the snake_case or CamelCase convention (e.g. *lidar_info* or *LidarInfo*).

The following is an example of calling the *WhiteboxTools* binary executable file directly from the command prompt:

```
>>./whitebox_tools --wd='/Users/johnlindsay/Documents/data/' ^
--run=DevFromMeanElev --input='DEM clipped.tif' ^
--output='DEV raster.tif' -v
```

Notice the quotation marks (single or double) used around directories and filenames, and string tool arguments in general. Use the '-v' flag (run in verbose mode) to force the tool print output to the command prompt. Please note that the whitebox_tools executable file must have permission to be executed; on some systems, this may require setting special permissions. Also, the above example uses the forward slash character (/), the directory path separator used on unix based systems. On Windows, users should use the back slash character (\) instead. Also, it is sometimes necessary to break (^) commands across multiple lines, as above, in order to better fit with the documents format. Actual command prompts should be contained to a single line.

5. Interacting With WhiteboxTools Through Python Scripting

By combining the *WhiteboxTools* library with the a high-level scripting language, such as Python, users are capable of creating powerful stand-alone geospatial applications and workflow automation scripts. In fact, *WhiteboxTools* functionality can be called from many different programming languages. However, given the prevalent use of the Python language in the geospatial field, the library is distributed with several resources specifically aimed at Python scripting. This section focuses on how Python programming can be used to interact with the *WhiteboxTools* library.

Note that all of the following material assumes the user system is configured with Python 3. The code snippets below are not guaranteed to work with older versions of the language.

5.1 Using the whitebox_tools.py Script

Interacting with WhiteboxTools from Python scripts is easy. To begin, each script must start by importing the WhiteboxTools class, contained with the whitebox_tools.py script; a new WhiteboxTools object can then be created:

```
from whitebox_tools import WhiteboxTools

wbt = WhiteboxTools()
```

The use of wbt to designate the WhiteboxTools object variable in the above script is just the convention used in this manual and other project resources. In fact, any variable name can be used for this purpose. Depending on the relative location of the *WhiteboxTools* directory and the script file that you are importing to, the import statement may need to be altered slightly. See An Example WhiteboxTools Python Project for more details on project set-up.

The WhiteboxTools class expects to find the WhiteboxTools executable file (whitebox_tools.exe on Windows and whitebox_tools on other platforms) within the same directory as the whitebox_tools.py script. If the binary file is located in a separate directory, you will need to set the executable directory as follows:

```
wbt.set_whitebox_dir('/local/path/to/whitebox/binary/')
# Or alternatively...
wbt.exe_path = '/local/path/to/whitebox/binary/'
```

Individual tools can be called using the convenience methods provided in the WhiteboxTools class:

```
# This line performs a 5 x 5 mean filter on 'inFile.tif':
wbt.mean_filter('/file/path/inFile.tif', '/file/path/outFile.tif', 5, 5)
```

Each tool has a cooresponding convenience method. The listing of tools in this manual includes information about each tool's Python convienience method, including default parameter values. Parameters with default values may be optionally left off of function calls. In addition to the convenience methods,

tools can be called using the run_tool() method, specifying the tool name and a list of tool arguments. Each of the tool-specific convenience methods collect their parameters into a properly formated list and then ultimately call the run_tools() method. Notice that while internally whitebox_tools.exe uses Camel-Case (e.g. MeanFilter) to denote tool names, the Python interface of whitebox_tools.py uses snake_case (e.g. mean_filter), according to Python style conventions. The only exceptions are tools with names that clash with Python keywords (e.g. And(), Not(), and Or()).

The return value can be used to check for errors during operation:

```
if wbt.ruggedness_index('/path/DEM.tif', '/path/ruggedness.tif') != 0:
    # Non-zero returns indicate an error.
    print('ERROR running ruggedness_index')
```

If, like me, your data files tend to be burried deeply in layers of sub-directories, specifying complete file names as input parameters can be tedius. In this case, the best option is setting the working directory before calling tools:

```
from whitebox_tools import WhiteboxTools

wbt = WhiteboxTools()

wbt.work_dir = "/path/to/data/" # Sets the Whitebox working directory

# Because the working directory has been set, file arguments can be

# specified simply using file names, without paths.

wbt.d_inf_flow_accumulation("DEM.tif", "output.tif", log=True)
```

An advanced text editor, such as VS Code or Atom, can provide hints and autocompletion for available tool convenience methods and their parameters, including default values (Figure 1).

Sometimes, however, it can be useful to print a complete list of available tools:

```
print(wbt.list_tools()) # List all tools in WhiteboxTools
```

The list_tools() method also takes an optional keywords list to search for tools:

```
# Lists tools with 'lidar' or 'LAS' in tool name or description.

print(wbt.list_tools(['lidar', 'LAS']))
```

To retrieve more detailed information for a specific tool, use the tool_help() method:

```
print(wbt.tool_help("elev_percentile"))
```

tool_help() prints tool details including a description, tool parameters (and their flags), and example usage at the command line prompt. The above statement prints this report:

```
ElevPercentile
Description:
Calculates the elevation percentile raster from a DEM.
Toolbox: Geomorphometric Analysis
```

```
19
            arc_sin
20
            arc_tan
21
            aspect
23
            atan2
24
            average_flowpath_slope
26
            average_overlay
27
            average_upslope_flowpath_length
28
            balance_contrast_enhancement
29
            basins
30
31
            bilateral_filter
        bilateral_filter(self, input, output, sigma_dist=0.75, sigma_int=1.0,
        callback=default_callback)
34
        A bilateral filter is an edge-preserving smoothing filter introduced by Tomasi and Manduchi (1998).
        Keyword arguments:
        input -- Input raster file.
        output -- Output raster file.
39
        sigma_dist -- Standard deviation in distance in pixels.
40
        sigma_int -- Standard deviation in intensity in pixels.
        callback -- Custom functon for handling tool text outputs.
41
42
       wbt.
```

Figure 1: Autocompletion in Atom text editor makes calling *WhiteboxTools* functions easier.

Parameters:

Tools will frequently print text to the standard output during their execution, including warnings, progress updates and other notifications. Sometimes, when users run many tools in complex workflows and in batch mode, these output messages can be undesirable. Most tools will have their outputs suppressed by setting the *verbose* mode to *False* as follows:

```
wbt.set_verbose_mode(False)
# Or, alternatively...
wbt.verbose = False
```

Alternatively, it may be helpful to capture the text output of a tool for custom processing. This is achieved by specifying a custom *callback* function to the tool's convenience method:

```
# This callback function suppresses printing progress updates,
# which always use the '%' character. The callback function
# approach is flexible and allows for any level of complex
# interaction with tool outputs.

def my_callback(value):
    if not "%" in value:
        print(value)

wbt.slope('DEM.tif', 'slope_raster.tif', callback=my_callback)
```

Callback functions can also serve as a means of cancelling operations:

```
def my_callback(value):
    if user_selected_cancel_btn: # Assumes a 'Cancel' button on a GUI
        print('Cancelling operation...')
        wbt.cancel_op = True
    else:
        print(value)

wbt.breach_depressions('DEM.tif', 'DEM_breached.tif', callback=my_callback)
```

The whitebox_tools.py script provides several other functions for interacting with the WhiteboxTools library, including:

```
# Print the WhiteboxTools help...a listing of available commands
  print(wbt.help())
  # Print the WhiteboxTools license
  print(wbt.license())
   # Print the WhiteboxTools version
  print("Version information: {}".format(wbt.version()))
   # Get the toolbox associated with a tool
10
  tb = wbt.toolbox('lidar info')
11
  # Retrieve a JSON object of a tool's parameters.
13
  tp = tool parameters('raster histogram')
14
15
  # Opens a browser and navigates to a tool's source code in the
  # WhiteboxTools GitHub repository
17
  wbt.view code('watershed')
```

For a working example of how to call functions and run tools from Python, see the *whitebox_example.py* Python script, which is distributed with the *WhiteboxTools* library.

5.2 An Example WhiteboxTools Python Project

In this section, we will create a Python project that utilizes the *WhiteboxTools* library to interpolate a LiDAR point-cloud, to process the resulting digital elevation model (DEM) to make it suitable for hydrological applications, and to perform a simple flow-accumulation operation. I suggest using an advanced coding text editor, such as *Visual Studio Code* or *Atom*, for this tutorial, but Python code can be written using any basic text editor.

Begin by creating a dedicated project directory called *FlowAccumExample* and copy *WhiteboxTools* binary file (i.e. the compressed file downloaded from the *Geomorphometry & Hydrogeomatics Research Group* website) into this folder. Using the decompression software on your computer, decompress (i.e. an operation sometimes called *unzipping*) the file into the newly created *FlowAccumExample* directory. You will find the compressed file contains a folder with contents similar to Figure 2.

The folder contains a number of files, including the *WhiteboxTools* executable file, the *whitebox_tools.py* python script, the WhiteboxTools Runner (*wb_runner.py*; see below), and this user manual. It is likely that the folder has a name that reflects the operating system and architecture that the binary file was compiled for (e.g. WhiteboxTools_darwin_amd64). Rename this directory to *WBT*. Also note, depending on your decompression software, it may be the case that the contents of the *WBT* folder itself contains a subdirectory that actually holds these files. If this is the case, be sure to move the contents of the sub-directory

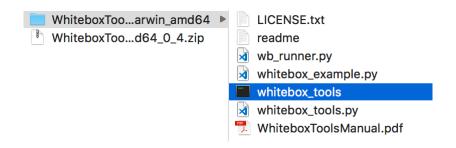


Figure 2: Folder contents of WhiteboxTools compressed download file

into the *WBT* parent directory.

Using your text editor, create a new Python script file, called <code>FlowAccumulation.py</code> within the <code>FlowAccumExample</code> directory. We will begin by importing the <code>WhiteboxTools</code> class from the <code>whitebox_tools.py</code> script contained within the <code>WBT</code> sub-directory. Unfortunately, Python's module system is only able to import classes and function definitions declared in external Python scripts <code>if</code> these external files are contained somewhere on the Python path or in the directory containing the script file into which you are importing. This is important because based on the project structure that we have established, the <code>whitebox_tools.py</code> script is actually contained within a sub-directory of the <code>FlowAccumExample</code> directory and is therefore not directly accessible, unless you have previously installed script on the Python path. Another, perhaps easier solution to this problem is to create a file named <code>_init_.py</code> (those are two leading and trailing underscore characters) within the <code>FlowAccumExample</code> directory. The presence of this empty file will make Python treat the <code>WBT</code> directory as containing packages, in this case, the <code>whitebox_tools</code> package. For more information, see the Python documentation on modules and packages.

At this stage, you should have a project directory structure like that of the Figure 3.



Figure 3: Example project set-up

Many operating systems will disallow the execution of files that are downloaded directly from the Internet. As such, it is possible that you will need to explicitly give the <code>whitebox_tools.exe</code> permission to execute on your computer (Note: here we are referring to the compiled <code>WhiteboxTools</code> binary file and not the similarly named Python script <code>whitebox_tools.py</code> also contained in the folder). The procedure for doing this depends on your specific operating system. On MacOS, for example, this is usually achieved using the 'Security & Privacy' tab under 'System Preferences'. To test whether <code>whitebox_tools.exe</code> has permission to run on your system, double-click the file. If the file is configured to execute, a command terminal will automatically open and the <code>WhiteboxTools</code> help documentation and a listing of the available tools will be printed. If this does not occur, you likely need to give the file permission to execute.

Using your text editor, you may now add the following lines to the FlowAccumulation.py file.

```
from WBT.whitebox_tools import WhiteboxTools

wbt = WhiteboxTools()
```

In the import statement, WBT is a reference to the package folder containing the WhiteboxTools files; whitebox_tools is a reference to the whitebox_tools.py script contained with this package folder; and WhiteboxTools is a reference to the WhiteboxTools class contained within this script file. Please note that if you named your directory containing the WhiteboxTools files something other than WBT, you would need to alter the import statement accordingly.

Visit the *Geomorphometry and Hydrogeomatics Research Group* website and download the St. Elis Mountains and Gulf of Alaska sample data set (*StElisAk.las*) from the *WhiteboxTools* section of the site. This file contains a LiDAR point cloud that has been previously filtered to remove points associated with non-ground returns, mainly trees (Figure 4). Create a sub-directory within the project folder called 'data' and copy *StElisAk.las* into the folder.

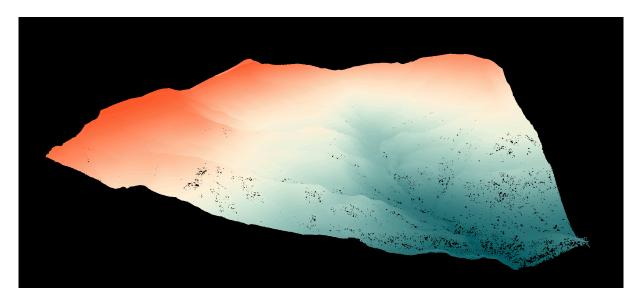


Figure 4: St. Elis Mountains LiDAR point cloud, visualized using the plas.io software

Now we can complete our flow accumulation analysis with the following code:

```
import os
from WBT.whitebox_tools import WhiteboxTools

wbt = WhiteboxTools()

# Set the working directory, i.e. the folder containing the data,
# to the 'data' sub-directory.

wbt.work_dir = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__)) + "/data/"

# When you're running mulitple tools, the outputs can be a tad
```

```
# chatty. In this case, you may want to suppress the output by
   # setting the verbose mode to False.
   # wbt.verbose = False
  # Interpolate the LiDAR data using an inverse-distance weighting
15
  # (IDW) scheme.
  print("Interpolating DEM...")
17
  wbt.lidar idw interpolation(
  i="StElisAk.las",
19
  output="raw dem.tif",
  parameter="elevation",
  returns="last",
  resolution=1.0,
23
  weight=1.0,
  radius=2.5
  )
26
27
   # The resulting DEM will contain NoData gaps. We need to fill
   # these in by interpolating across the gap.
  print("Filling missing data...")
  wbt.fill missing data(
  i="raw_dem.tif",
32
  output="dem nodata filled.tif",
  filter=11
  # This DEM will contain grid cells that have no lower neighbours.
  # This condition is unsuited for flow-path modelling applications
  # because these operations assume that each interior cell in the
  # DEM has at least one downslope neighour. We'll use an operation
  # called depression breaching to 'fix' the elevations within the
  # DEM to enforce continuous flow.
  print("Performing flow enforcement...")
  wbt.breach depressions(
  dem="dem nodata filled.tif",
  output="dem hydro enforced.tif"
  )
47
   # Lastly, perform the flow accumulation operation using the
   # D-infinity flow algorithm.
  print("Performing flow accumulation...")
51
  wbt.d inf flow accumulation(
  dem="dem hydro enforced.tif",
  output="flow_accum.tif",
```

```
1 log=True
55   )
57
58   print("Complete!")
```

To run the above script, open a terminal (command prompt), *cd* to the script containing folder, and run the following command:

>>python FlowAccumulation.py

If Python 3 is not your default Python version, substitute python3 for python in the above command line.

The final D-infinity flow accumulation raster can be displayed in any GIS software of choice and should look similar to Figure 5.

6. WhiteboxTools Runner

There is a Python script contained within the *WhiteboxTools* directory called 'wb_runner.py'. This script is intended to provide a very basic user-interface, *WhiteboxTools Runner*, for running the tools contained within the *WhiteboxTools* library. The user-interface uses Python's TkInter GUI library and is cross-platform. The user interface is currently experimental and is under heavy testing. Please report any issues that you experience in using it.

The WhiteboxTools Runner does not rely on the Whitebox GAT user interface at all and can therefore be used indepedent of the larger project. The script must be run from a directory that also contains the 'whitebox_tools.py' Python script and the 'whitebox_tools' executable file. There are plans to link tool help documentation in WhiteboxTools Runner and to incorporate toolbox information, rather than one large listing of available tools.

6. Available Tools

Eventually most of *Whitebox GAT*'s approximately 400 tools will be ported to *WhiteboxTools*, although this is an immense task. Support for vector data (Shapefile/GeoJSON) reading/writing and a topological analysis library (like the Java Topology Suite) will need to be added in order to port the tools involving vector spatial data. Opportunities to parallelize algorithms will be sought during porting. All new plugin tools will be added to *Whitebox GAT* using this library of functions.

The library currently contains the following 293 tools, which are each grouped based on their main function into one of the following categories: *Data Tools*, *Geomorphometric Analysis* (i.e. digital terrain analysis), *GIS Analysis*, *Hydrological Analysis*, *Image Analysis*, *LiDAR Analysis*, *Mathematical and Statistical Analysis*, and *Stream Network Analysis*. To retrieve detailed information about a tool's input arguments and example usage, either use the toolhelp command from the terminal, or the tool_help('tool_name') function

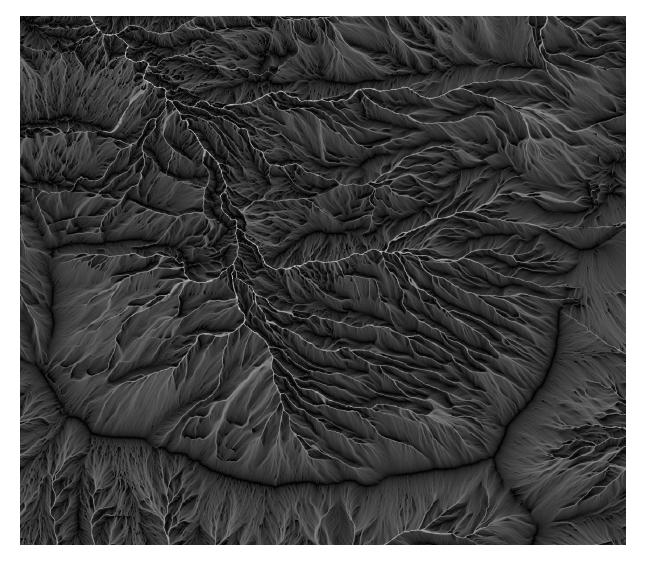


Figure 5: Output of the flow accumulation script for the St. Elis Mountains data set.

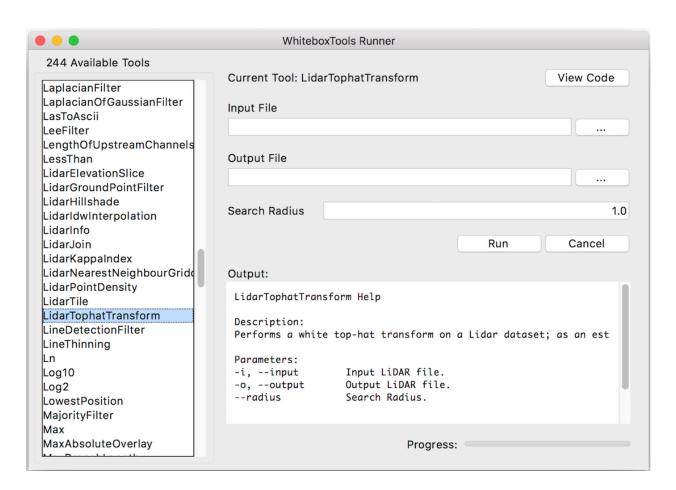


Figure 6: The WhiteboxTools Runner user-interface

from the *whitebox_tools.py* script. The following is a complete listing of available tools, with brief descriptions, tool parameter, and example usage.

7.1 Data Tools

7.1.1 ConvertNodataToZero

Converts nodata values in a raster to zero.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
convert_nodata_to_zero(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ConvertNodataToZero -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=in.tif -o=NewRaster.tif
```

7.1.2 ConvertRasterFormat

Converts raster data from one format to another.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
convert_raster_format(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ConvertRasterFormat -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.1.3 NewRasterFromBase

Creates a new raster using a base image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,base	Input base raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
value	Constant value to fill raster with; either 'nodata' or numeric value
data_type	Output raster data type; options include 'double' (64-bit), 'float' (32-bit), and 'integer' (signed 16-bit) (default is 'float')

Python function:

```
new_raster_from_base(
    base,
    output,
    value="nodata",
    data_type="float",
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NewRasterFromBase -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --base=base.tif -o=NewRaster.tif ^
--value=0.0 --data_type=integer
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=NewRasterFromBase -v --wd="/path/to/data/" --base=base.tif ^
-o=NewRaster.tif --value=nodata
```

7.1.4 PrintGeoTiffTags

Prints the tags within a GeoTIFF.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input GeoTIFF file

Python function:

```
print_geo_tiff_tags(
    i,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PrintGeoTiffTags -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=DEM.tiff
```

7.1.5 SetNodataValue

Assign a specified value in an input image to the NoData value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
back_value	Background value to set to nodata

Python function:

```
set_nodata_value(
    i,
    output,
    back_value=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SetNodataValue -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=in.tif -o=newRaster.tif --back_value=1.0
```

7.2 GIS Analysis

7.2.1 AggregateRaster

Aggregates a raster to a lower resolution.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
agg_factor type	Aggregation factor, in pixels Statistic used to fill output pixels

Python function:

```
aggregate_raster(
    i,
    output,
    agg_factor=2,
    type="mean",
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AggregateRaster -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif ^
--output_text
```

7.2.2 Centroid

Calculates the centroid, or average location, of raster polygon objects.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
text_output	Optional text output

```
centroid(
   i,
   output,
   text_output=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Centroid -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=polygons.tif -o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Centroid ^
-v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=polygons.tif -o=output.tif ^
--text_output
```

7.2.3 Clump

Groups cells that form physically discrete areas, assigning them unique identifiers.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
diag	Flag indicating whether diagonal connections should be considered
zero_back	Flag indicating whether zero values should be treated as a background

Python function:

```
clump(
    i,
    output,
    diag=True,
    zero_back=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Clump -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --diag
```

7.2.4 CreatePlane

Creates a raster image based on the equation for a simple plane.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
base	Input base raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
gradient	Slope gradient in degrees (-85.0 to 85.0)
aspect	Aspect (direction) in degrees clockwise from north (0.0-360.0)
constant	Constant value

Python function:

```
create_plane(
   base,
   output,
   gradient=15.0,
   aspect=90.0,
   constant=0.0,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CreatePlane -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--base=base.tif -o=NewRaster.tif --gradient=15.0 ^
--aspect=315.0
```

7.2.5 RasterCellAssignment

Assign row or column number to cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
-a,assign	Which variable would you like to assign to grid cells? Options include
	'column', 'row', 'x', and 'y'

```
raster_cell_assignment(
    i,
    output,
    assign="column",
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RasterCellAssignment -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--assign='column'
```

7.2.6 Reclass

Reclassifies the values in a raster image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
reclass_vals	Reclassification triplet values (new value; from value; to less than), e.g.
	'0.0;0.0;1.0;1.0;2.0'
assign_mode	Optional Boolean flag indicating whether to operate in assign mode, reclass_vals values are interpreted as new value; old value pairs

Python function:

```
reclass(
    i,
    output,
    reclass_vals,
    assign_mode=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Reclass -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--reclass_vals='0.0;0.0;1.0;1.0;1.0;2.0'
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=Reclass -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' ^
-o=output.tif --reclass_vals='10;1;20;2;30;3;40;4' ^
--assign_mode
```

7.2.7 ReclassEqualInterval

Reclassifies the values in a raster image based on equal-ranges.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
interval	Class interval size
start_val	Optional starting value (default is input minimum value)
end_val	Optional ending value (default is input maximum value)

Python function:

```
reclass_equal_interval(
    i,
    output,
    interval=10.0,
    start_val=None,
    end_val=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ReclassEqualInterval -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--interval=10.0 --start_val=0.0
```

7.2.8 ReclassFromFile

Reclassifies the values in a raster image using reclass ranges in a text file.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input reclass_file	Input raster file Input text file containing reclass ranges
-o,output	Output raster file

```
reclass_from_file(
    i,
    reclass_file,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ReclassFromFile -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' ^
--reclass_file='reclass.txt' -o=output.tif
```

7.3 GIS Analysis => Distance Tools

7.3.1 BufferRaster

Maps a distance-based buffer around each non-background (non-zero/non-nodata) grid cell in an input image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
size	Buffer size
gridcells	Optional flag to indicate that the 'size' threshold should be measured in grid
	cells instead of the default map units

Python function:

```
buffer_raster(
    i,
    output,
    size,
    gridcells=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BufferRaster -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.3.2 CostAllocation

Identifies the source cell to which each grid cell is connected by a least-cost pathway in a cost-distance analysis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
source	Input source raster file
backlink	Input backlink raster file generated by the cost-distance tool
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
cost_allocation(
   source,
   backlink,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CostAllocation -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--source='source.tif' --backlink='backlink.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.3.3 CostDistance

Performs cost-distance accumulation on a cost surface and a group of source cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
source	Input source raster file
cost	Input cost (friction) raster file
out_accum	Output cost accumulation raster file
out_backlink	Output backlink raster file

```
cost_distance(
   source,
   cost,
   out_accum,
```

```
out_backlink,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CostDistance -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--source=src.tif --cost=cost.tif --out_accum=accum.tif ^
--out_backlink=backlink.tif
```

7.3.4 CostPathway

Performs cost-distance pathway analysis using a series of destination grid cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
destination	Input destination raster file
backlink	Input backlink raster file generated by the cost-distance tool
-o,output	Output cost pathway raster file
zero_background	Flag indicating whether zero values should be treated as a background

Python function:

```
cost_pathway(
    destination,
    backlink,
    output,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CostPathway -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--destination=dst.tif --backlink=backlink.tif ^
--output=cost path.tif
```

7.3.5 EuclideanAllocation

Assigns grid cells in the output raster the value of the nearest target cell in the input image, measured by the Shih and Wu (2004) Euclidean distance transform.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
euclidean_allocation(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EuclideanAllocation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.3.6 Euclidean Distance

Calculates the Shih and Wu (2004) Euclidean distance transform.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
euclidean_distance(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EuclideanDistance -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.4 GIS Analysis => Overlay Tools

7.4.1 AverageOverlay

Calculates the average for each grid cell from a group of raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
average_overlay(
   inputs,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AverageOverlay -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.dep;image2.dep;image3.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.4.2 ErasePolygonFromRaster

Erases (cuts out) a vector polygon from a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
polygons	Input vector polygons file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
erase_polygon_from_raster(
    i,
    polygons,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ErasePolygonFromRaster -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='DEM.tif' --polygons='lakes.shp' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.4.3 HighestPosition

Identifies the stack position of the maximum value within a raster stack on a cell-by-cell basis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
highest_position(
   inputs,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HighestPosition -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.4.4 LowestPosition

Identifies the stack position of the minimum value within a raster stack on a cell-by-cell basis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

```
lowest_position(
   inputs,
   output,
```

```
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LowestPosition -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.4.5 MaxAbsoluteOverlay

Evaluates the maximum absolute value for each grid cell from a stack of input rasters.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
max_absolute_overlay(
    inputs,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxAbsoluteOverlay -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.4.6 MaxOverlay

Evaluates the maximum value for each grid cell from a stack of input rasters.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

```
max_overlay(
    inputs,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxOverlay -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.4.7 MinAbsoluteOverlay

Evaluates the minimum absolute value for each grid cell from a stack of input rasters.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
min_absolute_overlay(
    inputs,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MinAbsoluteOverlay -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.4.8 MinOverlay

Evaluates the minimum value for each grid cell from a stack of input rasters.

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file

```
min_overlay(
    inputs,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MinOverlay -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.4.9 PercentEqualTo

Calculates the percentage of a raster stack that have cell values equal to an input on a cell-by-cell basis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
comparison	Input comparison raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
percent_equal_to(
   inputs,
   comparison,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentEqualTo -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' --comparison='comp.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.4.10 PercentGreaterThan

Calculates the percentage of a raster stack that have cell values greather than an input on a cell-by-cell basis.

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
comparison	Input comparison raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
percent_greater_than(
    inputs,
    comparison,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentGreaterThan -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
--comparison='comp.tif' -o='output.tif'
```

7.4.11 PercentLessThan

Calculates the percentage of a raster stack that have cell values less than an input on a cell-by-cell basis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
comparison	Input comparison raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
percent_less_than(
    inputs,
    comparison,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentLessThan -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
--comparison='comp.tif' -o='output.tif'
```

7.4.12 PickFromList

Outputs the value from a raster stack specified by a position raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
pos_input	Input position raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
pick_from_list(
    inputs,
    pos_input,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PickFromList -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
--pos_input=position.tif -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.4.13 WeightedSum

Performs a weighted-sum overlay on multiple input raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file
-w,weights	Weight values, contained in quotes and separated by commas or semicolons

```
weighted_sum(
   inputs,
   output,
   weights,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=WeightedSum -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--weights='0.3;0.2;0.5'
```

7.5 GIS Analysis => Patch Shape Tools

7.5.1 EdgeProportion

Calculate the proportion of cells in a raster polygon that are edge cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
output_text	flag indicating whether a text report should also be output

Python function:

```
edge_proportion(
    i,
    output,
    output_text=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EdgeProportion -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --output_text
```

7.5.2 FindPatchOrClassEdgeCells

Finds all cells located on the edge of patch or class features.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
find_patch_or_class_edge_cells(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindPatchOrClassEdgeCells -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.5.3 RadiusOfGyration

Calculates the distance of cells from their polygon's centroid.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
text_output	Optional text output

Python function:

```
radius_of_gyration(
    i,
    output,
    text_output=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RadiusOfGyration -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=polygons.tif -o=output.tif ^
--text_output
```

7.6 Geomorphometric Analysis

7.6.1 Aspect

Calculates an aspect raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
aspect(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Aspect -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.2 DevFromMeanElev

Calculates deviation from mean elevation.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
dev_from_mean_elev(
    dem,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DevFromMeanElev -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--filter=25
```

7.6.3 DiffFromMeanElev

Calculates difference from mean elevation (equivalent to a high-pass filter).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
diff_from_mean_elev(
    dem,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DiffFromMeanElev -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--filter=25
```

7.6.4 DirectionalRelief

Calculates relief for cells in an input DEM for a specified direction.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
azimuth	Wind azimuth in degrees
max_dist	Optional maximum search distance (unspecified if none; in xy units)

```
directional_relief(
    dem,
    output,
    azimuth=0.0,
    max_dist=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DirectionalRelief -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--azimuth=315.0
```

7.6.5 DownslopeIndex

Calculates the Hjerdt et al. (2004) downslope index.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
drop	Vertical drop value (default is 2.0)
out_type	Output type, options include 'tangent', 'degrees', 'radians', 'distance'
	(default is 'tangent')

Python function:

```
downslope_index(
    dem,
    output,
    drop=2.0,
    out_type="tangent",
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DownslopeIndex -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=pointer.tif -o=dsi.tif --drop=5.0 --out_type=distance
```

7.6.6 ElevAbovePit

Calculate the elevation of each grid cell above the nearest downstream pit cell or grid edge cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
elev_above_pit(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevAbovePit -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.7 ElevPercentile

Calculates the elevation percentile raster from a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
sig_digits	Number of significant digits

```
elev_percentile(
    dem,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    sig_digits=2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevPercentile -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.6.8 ElevRelativeToMinMax

Calculates the elevation of a location relative to the minimum and maximum elevations in a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
elev_relative_to_min_max(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevRelativeToMinMax -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.9 ElevRelativeToWatershedMinMax

Calculates the elevation of a location relative to the minimum and maximum elevations in a watershed.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
watersheds	Input raster watersheds file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
elev_relative_to_watershed_min_max(
    dem,
    watersheds,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevRelativeToWatershedMinMax -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --watersheds=watershed.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.6.10 FeaturePreservingDenoise

Reduces short-scale variation in an input DEM using a modified Sun et al. (2007) algorithm.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filter	Size of the filter kernel
norm_diff	Maximum difference in normal vectors, in degrees
num_iter	Number of iterations
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

Python function:

```
feature_preserving_denoise(
    dem,
    output,
    filter=11,
    norm_diff=15.0,
    num_iter=5,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FeaturePreservingDenoise -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.11 FetchAnalysis

Performs an analysis of fetch or upwind distance to an obstacle.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
azimuth	Wind azimuth in degrees in degrees
hgt_inc	Height increment value

Python function:

```
fetch_analysis(
    dem,
    output,
    azimuth=0.0,
    hgt_inc=0.05,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FetchAnalysis -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif --azimuth=315.0
```

7.6.12 FillMissingData

Fills nodata holes in a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filter	Filter size (cells)

```
fill_missing_data(
    i,
    output,
    filter=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FillMissingData -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.6.13 FindRidges

Identifies potential ridge and peak grid cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
line_thin	Optional flag indicating whether post-processing line-thinning should be performed

Python function:

```
find_ridges(
    dem,
    output,
    line_thin=True,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindRidges -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=pointer.tif -o=out.tif --line_thin
```

7.6.14 Hillshade

Calculates a hillshade raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
azimuth	Illumination source azimuth in degrees
altitude	Illumination source altitude in degrees

Flag	Description
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
hillshade(
    dem,
    output,
    azimuth=315.0,
    altitude=30.0,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Hillshade -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --azimuth=315.0 --altitude=30.0
```

7.6.15 HorizonAngle

Calculates horizon angle (maximum upwind slope) for each grid cell in an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
azimuth	Wind azimuth in degrees
max_dist	Optional maximum search distance (unspecified if none; in xy units)

Python function:

```
horizon_angle(
    dem,
    output,
    azimuth=0.0,
    max_dist=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HorizonAngle -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif --azimuth=315.0
```

7.6.16 HypsometricAnalysis

Calculates a hypsometric curve for one or more DEMs.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input DEM files
watershed	Input watershed files (optional)
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

Python function:

```
hypsometric_analysis(
    inputs,
    output,
    watershed=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HypsometricAnalysis -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="DEM1.tif;DEM2.tif" ^
--watershed="ws1.tif;ws2.tif" -o=outfile.html
```

7.6.17 MaxAnisotropyDev

Calculates the maximum anisotropy (directionality) in elevation deviation over a range of spatial scales.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
out_mag	Output raster DEVmax magnitude file
out_scale	Output raster DEVmax scale file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

```
max_anisotropy_dev(
    dem,
    out_mag,
```

```
out_scale,
max_scale,
min_scale=3,
step=2,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxAnisotropyDev -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --out_mag=DEVmax_mag.tif ^
--out_scale=DEVmax_scale.tif --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.18 MaxAnisotropyDevSignature

Calculates the anisotropy in deviation from mean for points over a range of spatial scales.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
points	Input vector points file
-o,output	Output HTML file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

Python function:

```
max_anisotropy_dev_signature(
    dem,
    points,
    output,
    max_scale,
    min_scale=1,
    step=1,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxAnisotropyDevSignature -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --points=sites.shp ^
--output=roughness.html --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.19 MaxBranchLength

Lindsay and Seibert's (2013) branch length index is used to map drainage divides or ridge lines.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file	
-o,output	Output raster file	
log	Optional flag to request the output be log-transformed	

Python function:

```
max_branch_length(
    dem,
    output,
    log=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxBranchLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.20 MaxDownslopeElevChange

Calculates the maximum downslope change in elevation between a grid cell and its eight downslope neighbors.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
max_downslope_elev_change(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxDownslopeElevChange -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=out.tif
```

7.6.21 MaxElevDevSignature

Calculates the maximum elevation deviation over a range of spatial scales and for a set of points.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
points	Input vector points file
-o,output	Output HTML file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

Python function:

```
max_elev_dev_signature(
    dem,
    points,
    output,
    min_scale,
    max_scale,
    step=10,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxElevDevSignature -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --points=sites.tif ^
--output=topo_position.html --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.22 MaxElevationDeviation

Calculates the maximum elevation deviation over a range of spatial scales.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
out_mag	Output raster DEVmax magnitude file
out_scale	Output raster DEVmax scale file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

```
max_elevation_deviation(
    dem,
    out_mag,
    out_scale,
    min_scale,
    max_scale,
    step=10,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxElevationDeviation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --out_mag=DEVmax_mag.tif ^
--out_scale=DEVmax_scale.tif --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.23 MinDownslopeElevChange

Calculates the minimum downslope change in elevation between a grid cell and its eight downslope neighbors.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
min_downslope_elev_change(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MinDownslopeElevChange -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=out.tif
```

7.6.24 MultiscaleRoughness

Calculates surface roughness over a range of spatial scales.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
out_mag	Output raster roughness magnitude file
out_scale	Output raster roughness scale file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

Python function:

```
multiscale_roughness(
    dem,
    out_mag,
    out_scale,
    max_scale,
    min_scale=1,
    step=1,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MultiscaleRoughness -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --out_mag=roughness_mag.tif ^
--out_scale=roughness_scale.tif --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.25 MultiscaleRoughnessSignature

Calculates the surface roughness for points over a range of spatial scales.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
points	Input vector points file
-o,output	Output HTML file
min_scale	Minimum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
max_scale	Maximum search neighbourhood radius in grid cells
step	Step size as any positive non-zero integer

```
multiscale_roughness_signature(
    dem,
    points,
    output,
    max_scale,
    min_scale=1,
    step=1,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MultiscaleRoughnessSignature -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif --points=sites.shp ^
--output=roughness.html --min_scale=1 --max_scale=1000 ^
--step=5
```

7.6.26 MultiscaleTopographicPositionImage

Creates a multiscale topographic position image from three DEVmax rasters of differing spatial scale ranges.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
local	Input local-scale topographic position (DEVmax) raster file
meso	Input meso-scale topographic position (DEVmax) raster file
broad	Input broad-scale topographic position (DEVmax) raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
lightness	Image lightness value (default is 1.2)

```
multiscale_topographic_position_image(
    local,
    meso,
    broad,
    output,
    lightness=1.2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MultiscaleTopographicPositionImage -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --local=DEV_local.tif --meso=DEV_meso.tif ^
--broad=DEV_broad.tif -o=output.tif --lightness=1.5
```

7.6.27 NumDownslopeNeighbours

Calculates the number of downslope neighbours to each grid cell in a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
num_downslope_neighbours(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NumDownslopeNeighbours -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.28 NumUpslopeNeighbours

Calculates the number of upslope neighbours to each grid cell in a DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
num_upslope_neighbours(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NumUpslopeNeighbours -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.29 PennockLandformClass

Classifies hillslope zones based on slope, profile curvature, and plan curvature.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
slope	Slope threshold value, in degrees (default is 3.0)
prof	Profile curvature threshold value (default is 0.1)
plan	Plan curvature threshold value (default is 0.0)
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

Python function:

```
pennock_landform_class(
    dem,
    output,
    slope=3.0,
    prof=0.1,
    plan=0.0,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PennockLandformClass -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --slope=3.0 ^ --prof=0.1 --plan=0.0
```

7.6.30 PercentElevRange

Calculates percent of elevation range from a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
percent_elev_range(
    dem,
    output,
    filterx=3,
    filtery=3,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentElevRange -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.6.31 PlanCurvature

Calculates a plan (contour) curvature raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
plan_curvature(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PlanCurvature -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.32 Profile

Plots profiles from digital surface models.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
lines	Input vector line file
surface	Input raster surface file
-o,output	Output HTML file

Python function:

```
profile(
    lines,
    surface,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Profile -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--lines=profile.shp --surface=dem.tif -o=profile.html
```

7.6.33 ProfileCurvature

Calculates a profile curvature raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
profile_curvature(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ProfileCurvature -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.34 RelativeAspect

Calculates relative aspect (relative to a user-specified direction) from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
azimuth	Illumination source azimuth
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

Python function:

```
relative_aspect(
    dem,
    output,
    azimuth=0.0,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RelativeAspect -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --azimuth=180.0
```

7.6.35 RelativeStreamPowerIndex

Calculates the relative stream power index.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
sca	Input raster specific contributing area (SCA) file
slope	Input raster slope file
-o,output	Output raster file
exponent	SCA exponent value

Python function:

```
relative_stream_power_index(
    sca,
    slope,
    output,
    exponent=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RelativeStreamPowerIndex -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --sca='flow_accum.tif' ^
--slope='slope.tif' -o=output.tif --exponent=1.1
```

7.6.36 RelativeTopographicPosition

Calculates the relative topographic position index from a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
relative_topographic_position(
   dem,
   output,
```

```
filterx=11,
filtery=11,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RelativeTopographicPosition -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--filter=25
```

7.6.37 RemoveOffTerrainObjects

Removes off-terrain objects from a raster digital elevation model (DEM).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
filter	Filter size (cells)
slope	Slope threshold value

Python function:

```
remove_off_terrain_objects(
    dem,
    output,
    filter=11,
    slope=15.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RemoveOffTerrainObjects -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=bare_earth_DEM.tif ^
--filter=25 --slope=10.0
```

7.6.38 RuggednessIndex

Calculates the Riley et al.'s (1999) terrain ruggedness index from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
ruggedness_index(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RuggednessIndex -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.39 SedimentTransportIndex

Calculates the sediment transport index.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
sca	Input raster specific contributing area (SCA) file
slope	Input raster slope file
-o,output	Output raster file
sca_exponent	SCA exponent value
slope_exponent	Slope exponent value

Python function:

```
sediment_transport_index(
    sca,
    slope,
    output,
    sca_exponent=0.4,
    slope_exponent=1.3,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SedimentTransportIndex -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" --sca='flow_accum.tif' ^
--slope='slope.tif' -o=output.tif --sca_exponent=0.5 ^
--slope_exponent=1.0
```

7.6.40 Slope

Calculates a slope raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

Python function:

```
slope(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Slope -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.41 SlopeVsElevationPlot

Creates a slope vs. elevation plot for one or more DEMs.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input DEM files
watershed	Input watershed files (optional)
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

```
slope_vs_elevation_plot(
    inputs,
    output,
    watershed=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SlopeVsElevationPlot -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="DEM1.tif;DEM2.tif" ^
--watershed="ws1.tif;ws2.tif" -o=outfile.html
```

7.6.42 Tangential Curvature

Calculates a tangential curvature raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

Python function:

```
tangential_curvature(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TangentialCurvature -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.43 TotalCurvature

Calculates a total curvature raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zfactor	Optional multiplier for when the vertical and horizontal units are not the same

```
total_curvature(
    dem,
    output,
    zfactor=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TotalCurvature -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.6.44 Viewshed

Identifies the viewshed for a point or set of points.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
dem	Input raster DEM file
stations	Input viewing station vector file
-o,output	Output raster file
height	Viewing station height, in z units

Python function:

```
viewshed(
    dem,
    stations,
    output,
    height=2.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Viewshed -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem='dem.tif' --stations='stations.shp' -o=output.tif ^
--height=10.0
```

7.6.45 WetnessIndex

Calculates the topographic wetness index, Ln(A / tan(slope)).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
sca	Input raster specific contributing area (SCA) file
slope	Input raster slope file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
wetness_index(
    sca,
    slope,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=WetnessIndex -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--sca='flow_accum.tif' --slope='slope.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.7 Hydrological Analysis

7.7.1 AverageFlowpathSlope

Measures the average slope gradient from each grid cell to all upslope divide cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
average_flowpath_slope(
   dem,
   output,
```

callback=default_callback)

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AverageFlowpathSlope -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.2 AverageUpslopeFlowpathLength

Measures the average length of all upslope flowpaths draining each grid cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
average_upslope_flowpath_length(
   dem,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AverageUpslopeFlowpathLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.3 Basins

Identifies drainage basins that drain to the DEM edge.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
basins(
    d8_pntr,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Basins -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --d8_pntr='d8pntr.tif' -o='output.tif'
```

7.7.4 BreachDepressions

Breaches all of the depressions in a DEM using Lindsay's (2016) algorithm. This should be preferred over depression filling in most cases.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
max_depth	Optional maximum breach depth (default is Inf)
max_length	Optional maximum breach channel length (in grid cells; default is Inf)

Python function:

```
breach_depressions(
    dem,
    output,
    max_depth=None,
    max_length=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BreachDepressions -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.5 BreachSingleCellPits

Removes single-cell pits from an input DEM by breaching.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
breach_single_cell_pits(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BreachSingleCellPits -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.6 D8FlowAccumulation

Calculates a D8 flow accumulation raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
out_type	Output type; one of 'cells', 'specific contributing area' (default), and
	'catchment area'
log	Optional flag to request the output be log-transformed
clip	Optional flag to request clipping the display max by 1%

Python function:

```
d8_flow_accumulation(
    dem,
    output,
    out_type="specific contributing area",
    log=False,
    clip=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=D8FlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.dtifep ^
```

```
--out_type='cells'
>>./whitebox_tools -r=D8FlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_type='specific catchment area' --log --clip
```

7.7.7 D8MassFlux

Performs a D8 mass flux calculation.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
dem	Input raster DEM file
loading	Input loading raster file
efficiency	Input efficiency raster file
absorption	Input absorption raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
d8_mass_flux(
    dem,
    loading,
    efficiency,
    absorption,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=D8MassFlux -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif --loading=load.tif --efficiency=eff.tif ^
--absorption=abs.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.8 D8Pointer

Calculates a D8 flow pointer raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
d8_pointer(
    dem,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=D8Pointer -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.9 DInfFlowAccumulation

Calculates a D-infinity flow accumulation raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
out_type	Output type; one of 'cells', 'sca' (default), and 'ca'
threshold	Optional convergence threshold parameter, in grid cells; default is inifinity
log	Optional flag to request the output be log-transformed
clip	Optional flag to request clipping the display max by 1%

Python function:

```
d_inf_flow_accumulation(
    dem,
    output,
    out_type="Specific Contributing Area",
    threshold=None,
    log=False,
    clip=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DInfFlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_type=sca
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DInfFlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_type=sca --threshold=10000 --log --clip
```

7.7.10 DInfMassFlux

Performs a D-infinity mass flux calculation.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
dem	Input raster DEM file
loading	Input loading raster file
efficiency	Input efficiency raster file
absorption	Input absorption raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
d_inf_mass_flux(
    dem,
    loading,
    efficiency,
    absorption,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DInfMassFlux -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif --loading=load.tif --efficiency=eff.tif ^
--absorption=abs.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.11 DInfPointer

Calculates a D-infinity flow pointer (flow direction) raster from an input DEM.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
d_inf_pointer(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DInfPointer -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif
```

7.7.12 DepthInSink

Measures the depth of sinks (depressions) in a DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zero_background	Flag indicating whether the background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
depth_in_sink(
    dem,
    output,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DepthInSink -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --zero_background
```

7.7.13 DownslopeDistanceToStream

Measures distance to the nearest downslope stream cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
downslope_distance_to_stream(
    dem,
    streams,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DownslopeDistanceToStream -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem='dem.tif' --streams='streams.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.7.14 DownslopeFlowpathLength

Calculates the downslope flowpath length from each cell to basin outlet.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
watersheds	Optional input watershed raster file
weights	Optional input weights raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
downslope_flowpath_length(
    d8_pntr,
    output,
    watersheds=None,
```

```
weights=None,
esri_pntr=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DownslopeFlowpathLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=pointer.tif ^
-o=flowpath_len.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=DownslopeFlowpathLength -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr=pointer.tif --watersheds=basin.tif ^
--weights=weights.tif -o=flowpath_len.tif --esri_pntr
```

7.7.15 ElevationAboveStream

Calculates the elevation of cells above the nearest downslope stream cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
elevation_above_stream(
    dem,
    streams,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevationAboveStream -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem='dem.tif' --streams='streams.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.7.16 ElevationAboveStreamEuclidean

Calculates the elevation of cells above the nearest (Euclidean distance) stream cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
elevation_above_stream_euclidean(
   dem,
   streams,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ElevationAboveStreamEuclidean -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.7.17 FD8FlowAccumulation

Calculates an FD8 flow accumulation raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
out_type	Output type; one of 'cells', 'specific contributing area' (default), and
	'catchment area'
exponent	Optional exponent parameter; default is 1.1
threshold	Optional convergence threshold parameter, in grid cells; default is inifinity
log	Optional flag to request the output be log-transformed
clip	Optional flag to request clipping the display max by 1%

```
fd8_flow_accumulation(
    dem,
    output,
    out_type="specific contributing area",
```

```
exponent=1.1,
threshold=None,
log=False,
clip=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FD8FlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_type='cells'
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FD8FlowAccumulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_type='catchment area' --exponent=1.5 --threshold=10000 ^
--log --clip
```

7.7.18 FD8Pointer

Calculates an FD8 flow pointer raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
fd8_pointer(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FD8Pointer -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.19 FillBurn

Burns streams into a DEM using the FillBurn (Saunders, 1999) method.

Flag	Description
dem	Input raster DEM file
streams	Input vector streams file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
fill_burn(
    dem,
    streams,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FillBurn -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif --streams=streams.shp -o=dem_burned.tif
```

7.7.20 FillDepressions

Fills all of the depressions in a DEM. Depression breaching should be preferred in most cases.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
fix_flats	Optional flag indicating whether flat areas should have a small gradient applied

Python function:

```
fill_depressions(
    dem,
    output,
    fix_flats=True,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FillDepressions -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif ^
--fix_flats
```

7.7.21 FillSingleCellPits

Raises pit cells to the elevation of their lowest neighbour.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
fill_single_cell_pits(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FillSingleCellPits -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=NewRaster.tif
```

7.7.22 FindNoFlowCells

Finds grid cells with no downslope neighbours.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
find_no_flow_cells(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindNoFlowCells -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=NewRaster.tif
```

7.7.23 FindParallelFlow

Finds areas of parallel flow in D8 flow direction rasters.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
find_parallel_flow(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindParallelFlow -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=pointer.tif ^
-o=out.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindParallelFlow -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=pointer.tif -o=out.tif ^
--streams='streams.tif'
```

7.7.24 FlattenLakes

Flattens lake polygons in a raster DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
lakes	Input lakes vector polygons file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
flatten_lakes(
   dem,
   lakes,
```

```
output,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FlattenLakes -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem='DEM.tif' --lakes='lakes.shp' -o='output.tif'
```

7.7.25 FloodOrder

Assigns each DEM grid cell its order in the sequence of inundations that are encountered during a search starting from the edges, moving inward at increasing elevations.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
flood_order(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FloodOrder -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.26 FlowAccumulationFullWorkflow

Resolves all of the depressions in a DEM, outputting a breached DEM, an aspect-aligned non-divergent flow pointer, a flow accumulation raster.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
out_dem	Output raster DEM file
out_pntr	Output raster flow pointer file
out_accum	Output raster flow accumulation file

Flag	Description
out_type	Output type; one of 'cells', 'sca' (default), and 'ca'
log	Optional flag to request the output be log-transformed
clip	Optional flag to request clipping the display max by 1%
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
flow_accumulation_full_workflow(
    dem,
    out_dem,
    out_pntr,
    out_accum,
    out_type="Specific Contributing Area",
    log=False,
    clip=False,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FlowAccumulationFullWorkflow -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem='DEM.tif' ^
--out_dem='DEM_filled.tif' --out_pntr='pointer.tif' ^
--out_accum='accum.tif' --out_type=sca --log --clip
```

7.7.27 FlowLengthDiff

Calculates the local maximum absolute difference in downslope flowpath length, useful in mapping drainage divides and ridges.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
flow_length_diff(
    d8_pntr,
    output,
```

```
esri_pntr=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FlowLengthDiff -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr=pointer.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.28 Hillslopes

Identifies the individual hillslopes draining to each link in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
hillslopes(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Hillslopes -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr='d8pntr.tif' --streams='streams.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.7.29 Isobasins

Divides a landscape into nearly equal sized drainage basins (i.e. watersheds).

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file
size	Target basin size, in grid cells

```
isobasins(
   dem,
   output,
   size,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Isobasins -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --size=1000
```

7.7.30 JensonSnapPourPoints

Moves outlet points used to specify points of interest in a watershedding operation to the nearest stream cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
pour_pts	Input raster pour points (outlet) file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
snap_dist	Maximum snap distance in map units

Python function:

```
jenson_snap_pour_points(
    pour_pts,
    streams,
    output,
    snap_dist,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=JensonSnapPourPoints -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --pour_pts='pour_pts.tif' ^
--streams='streams.tif' -o='output.tif' --snap_dist=15.0
```

7.7.31 MaxUpslopeFlowpathLength

Measures the maximum length of all upslope flowpaths draining each grid cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file	
-o,output	Output raster file	

Python function:

```
max_upslope_flowpath_length(
    dem,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxUpslopeFlowpathLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaxUpslopeFlowpathLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --log ^
--clip
```

7.7.32 NumInflowingNeighbours

Computes the number of inflowing neighbours to each cell in an input DEM based on the D8 algorithm.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
num_inflowing_neighbours(
    dem,
    output,
```

callback=default_callback)

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NumInflowingNeighbours -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.33 Rho8Pointer

Calculates a stochastic Rho8 flow pointer raster from an input DEM.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
rho8_pointer(
   dem,
   output,
   esri_pntr=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Rho8Pointer -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.7.34 Sink

Identifies the depressions in a DEM, giving each feature a unique identifier.

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

```
sink(
   dem,
   output,
   zero_background=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Sink -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --zero_background
```

7.7.35 SnapPourPoints

Moves outlet points used to specify points of interest in a watershedding operation to the cell with the highest flow accumulation in its neighbourhood.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
pour_pts	Input raster pour points (outlet) file
flow_accum	Input raster D8 flow accumulation file
-o,output	Output raster file
snap_dist	Maximum snap distance in map units

Python function:

```
snap_pour_points(
    pour_pts,
    flow_accum,
    output,
    snap_dist,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SnapPourPoints -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--pour_pts='pour_pts.tif' --flow_accum='d8accum.tif' ^
-o='output.tif' --snap dist=15.0
```

7.7.36 StrahlerOrderBasins

Identifies Strahler-order basins from an input stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
strahler_order_basins(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StrahlerOrderBasins -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr='d8pntr.tif' ^
--streams='streams.tif' -o='output.tif'
```

7.7.37 Subbasins

Identifies the catchments, or sub-basin, draining to each link in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
subbasins(
   d8_pntr,
   streams,
```

```
output,
esri_pntr=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Subbasins -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr='d8pntr.tif' --streams='streams.tif' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.7.38 TraceDownslopeFlowpaths

Traces downslope flowpaths from one or more target sites (i.e. seed points).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
seed_pts	Input raster seed points file
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
trace_downslope_flowpaths(
    seed_pts,
    d8_pntr,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TraceDownslopeFlowpaths -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --seed_pts=seeds.tif ^
--flow_direflow_directions.tif --output=flow_paths.tif
```

7.7.39 Watershed

Identifies the watershed, or drainage basin, draining to a set of target cells.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input D8 pointer raster file
pour_pts	Input vector pour points (outlet) file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
watershed(
    d8_pntr,
    pour_pts,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Watershed -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr='d8pntr.tif' --pour_pts='pour_pts.shp' ^
-o='output.tif'
```

7.8 Image Processing Tools

7.8.1 Closing

A closing is a mathematical morphology operating involving an erosion (min filter) of a dilation (max filter) set.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
closing(
   i,
   output,
```

```
filterx=11,
filtery=11,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Closing -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.8.2 CreateColourComposite

Creates a colour-composite image from three bands of multispectral imagery.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
red	Input red band image file
green	Input green band image file
blue	Input blue band image file
opacity	Input opacity band image file (optional)
-o,output	Output colour composite file
enhance	Optional flag indicating whether a balance contrast enhancement is performed

Python function:

```
create_colour_composite(
    red,
    green,
    blue,
    output,
    opacity=None,
    enhance=True,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CreateColourComposite -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --red=band3.tif --green=band2.tif ^
--blue=band1.tif -o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=CreateColourComposite -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--red=band3.tif --green=band2.tif --blue=band1.tif ^
--opacity=a.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.8.3 FlipImage

Reflects an image in the vertical or horizontal axis.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
direction	Direction of reflection; options include 'V' (vertical), 'h' (horizontal), and 'b' (both)

Python function:

```
flip_image(
    i,
    output,
    direction="vertical",
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FlipImage -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --input=in.tif -o=out.tif --direction=h
```

7.8.4 IhsToRgb

Converts intensity, hue, and saturation (IHS) images into red, green, and blue (RGB) images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
intensity	Input intensity file
hue	Input hue file
saturation	Input saturation file
red	Output red band file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
green	Output green band file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
blue	Output blue band file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
-o,output	Output colour-composite file. Only used if individual bands are not specified

```
ihs_to_rgb(
    intensity,
    hue,
    saturation,
    red=None,
    green=None,
    blue=None,
    output=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=IhsToRgb -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--intensity=intensity.tif --hue=hue.tif ^
--saturation=saturation.tif --red=band3.tif --green=band2.tif ^
--blue=band1.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=IhsToRgb -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --intensity=intensity.tif --hue=hue.tif ^
--saturation=saturation.tif --composite=image.tif
```

7.8.5 ImageStackProfile

Plots an image stack profile (i.e. signature) for a set of points and multispectral images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,inputs	Input multispectral image files	
points	Input vector points file	
-o,output	Output HTML file	

Python function:

```
image_stack_profile(
    inputs,
    points,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ImageStackProfile -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
--points=pts.shp -o=output.html
```

7.8.6 IntegralImage

Transforms an input image (summed area table) into its integral image equivalent.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
integral_image(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=IntegralImage -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.8.7 KMeansClustering

Performs a k-means clustering operation on a multi-spectral dataset.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file
out_html	Output HTML report file
classes	Number of classes
max_iterations	Maximum number of iterations
class_change	Minimum percent of cells changed between iterations before completion
initialize	How to initialize cluster centres?
min_class_size	Minimum class size, in pixels

```
k_means_clustering(
    inputs,
    output,
    classes,
    out_html=None,
    max_iterations=10,
    class_change=2.0,
    initialize="diagonal",
    min_class_size=10,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KMeansClustering -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif --out_html=report.html --classes=15 ^
--max_iterations=25 --class_change=1.5 --initialize='random' ^
--min_class_size=500
```

7.8.8 LineThinning

Performs line thinning a on Boolean raster image; intended to be used with the RemoveSpurs tool.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
line_thinning(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LineThinning -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --input=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.8.9 ModifiedKMeansClustering

Performs a modified k-means clustering operation on a multi-spectral dataset.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file
out_html	Output HTML report file
start_clusters	Initial number of clusters
merger_dist	Cluster merger distance
max_iterations	Maximum number of iterations
class_change	Minimum percent of cells changed between iterations before completion

Python function:

```
modified_k_means_clustering(
    inputs,
    output,
    out_html=None,
    start_clusters=1000,
    merger_dist=None,
    max_iterations=10,
    class_change=2.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ModifiedKMeansClustering -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
-o=output.tif --out_html=report.html --start_clusters=100 ^
--merger_dist=30.0 --max_iterations=25 --class_change=1.5
```

7.8.10 Mosaic

Mosaics two or more images together.

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output raster file
method	Resampling method
•	

```
mosaic(
   inputs,
   output,
   method="cc",
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Mosaic -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' -o=dest.tif ^
--method='cc
```

7.8.11 NormalizedDifferenceVegetationIndex

Calculates the normalized difference vegetation index (NDVI) from near-infrared and red imagery.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
nir	Input near-infrared band image
red	Input red band image
-o,output	Output raster file
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent
osavi	Optional flag indicating whether the optimized soil-adjusted veg index (OSAVI) should be used

Python function:

```
normalized_difference_vegetation_index(
    nir,
    red,
    output,
    clip=0.0,
    osavi=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NormalizedDifferenceVegetationIndex -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --nir=band4.tif --red=band3.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=NormalizedDifferenceVegetationIndex -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
```

```
--nir=band4.tif --red=band3.tif -o=output.tif --clip=1.0 ^ --osavi
```

7.8.12 Opening

An opening is a mathematical morphology operating involving a dilation (max filter) of an erosion (min filter) set.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
opening(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Opening -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.8.13 PrincipalComponentAnalysis

Performs a principal component analysis (PCA) on a multi-spectral dataset.

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
out_html	Output HTML report file
num_comp standardized	Number of component images to output; <= to num. input images Perform standardized PCA?

```
principal_component_analysis(
    inputs,
    out_html=None,
    num_comp=None,
    standardized=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PrincipalComponentAnalysis -v ^
--wd='/path/to/data/' -i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' ^
--out_html=report.html --num_comp=3 --standardized
```

7.8.14 RemoveSpurs

Removes the spurs (pruning operation) from a Boolean line image.; intended to be used on the output of the LineThinning tool.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
iterations	Maximum number of iterations

Python function:

```
remove_spurs(
    i,
    output,
    iterations=10,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RemoveSpurs -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --iterations=10
```

7.8.15 Resample

Resamples one or more input images into a destination image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
destination	Destination raster file
method	Resampling method

Python function:

```
resample(
   inputs,
   destination,
   method="cc",
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Resample -v --wd='/path/to/data/' ^
-i='image1.tif;image2.tif;image3.tif' --destination=dest.tif ^
--method='cc
```

7.8.16 RgbTolhs

Converts red, green, and blue (RGB) images into intensity, hue, and saturation (IHS) images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
red	Input red band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
green	Input green band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
blue	Input blue band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
composite	Input colour-composite image file. Only used if individual bands are not specified
intensity	Output intensity raster file
hue	Output hue raster file
saturation	Output saturation raster file

```
rgb_to_ihs(
   intensity,
   hue,
   saturation,
   red=None,
   green=None,
   blue=None,
   composite=None,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RgbToIhs -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--red=band3.tif --green=band2.tif --blue=band1.tif ^
--intensity=intensity.tif --hue=hue.tif ^
--saturation=saturation.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RgbToIhs -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --composite=image.tif ^
--intensity=intensity.tif --hue=hue.tif ^
--saturation=saturation.tif
```

7.8.17 SplitColourComposite

This tool splits an RGB colour composite image into seperate multispectral images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input colour composite image file	
-o,output	Output raster file (suffixes of '_r', '_g', and '_b' will be appended)	

Python function:

```
split_colour_composite(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SplitColourComposite -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.8.18 ThickenRasterLine

Thickens single-cell wide lines within a raster image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
thicken_raster_line(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ThickenRasterLine -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.8.19 TophatTransform

Performs either a white or black top-hat transform on an input image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
variant	Optional variant value. Options include 'white' and 'black'

```
tophat_transform(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    variant="white",
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TophatTransform -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.8.20 WriteFunctionMemoryInsertion

Performs a write function memory insertion for single-band multi-date change detection.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input raster file associated with the first date
i2,input2	Input raster file associated with the second date
i3,input3	Optional input raster file associated with the third date
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
write_function_memory_insertion(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   input3=None,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=WriteFunctionMemoryInsertion -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i1=input1.tif -i2=input2.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.9 Image Processing Tools => Filters

7.9.1 AdaptiveFilter

Performs an adaptive filter on an image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
threshold	Difference from mean threshold, in standard deviations

```
adaptive_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    threshold=2.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AdaptiveFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25 --threshold = 2.0
```

7.9.2 BilateralFilter

A bilateral filter is an edge-preserving smoothing filter introduced by Tomasi and Manduchi (1998).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
sigma_dist	Standard deviation in distance in pixels
sigma_int	Standard deviation in intensity in pixels

```
bilateral_filter(
    i,
    output,
    sigma_dist=0.75,
    sigma_int=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BilateralFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif ^
--sigma_dist=2.5 --sigma_int=4.0
```

7.9.3 ConservativeSmoothingFilter

Performs a conservative-smoothing filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
conservative_smoothing_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ConservativeSmoothingFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.4 DiffOfGaussianFilter

Performs a Difference of Gaussian (DoG) filter on an image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
sigma1	Standard deviation distance in pixels
sigma2	Standard deviation distance in pixels

```
diff_of_gaussian_filter(
    i,
    output,
    sigma1=2.0,
    sigma2=4.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DiffOfGaussianFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --sigma1=2.0 ^
--sigma2=4.0
```

7.9.5 DiversityFilter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the number of different values in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
diversity_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DiversityFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.6 EdgePreservingMeanFilter

Performs a simple edge-preserving mean filter on an input image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filter	Size of the filter kernel
threshold	Maximum difference in values

Python function:

```
edge_preserving_mean_filter(
    i,
    output,
    threshold,
    filter=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EdgePreservingMeanFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=image.tif -o=output.tif ^
--filter=5 --threshold=20
```

7.9.7 EmbossFilter

Performs an emboss filter on an image, similar to a hillshade operation.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
direction	Direction of reflection; options include 'n', 's', 'e', 'w', 'ne', 'se', 'nw',
	'sw'
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

```
emboss_filter(
    i,
    output,
    direction="n",
    clip=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EmbossFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --direction='s' --clip=1.0
```

7.9.8 GaussianFilter

Performs a Gaussian filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
sigma	Standard deviation distance in pixels

Python function:

```
gaussian_filter(
   i,
   output,
   sigma=0.75,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=GaussianFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --sigma=2.0
```

7.9.9 HighPassFilter

Performs a high-pass filter on an input image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
high_pass_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HighPassFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.10 KNearestMeanFilter

A k-nearest mean filter is a type of edge-preserving smoothing filter.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
-k	k-value in pixels; this is the number of nearest-valued neighbours to use

```
k_nearest_mean_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    k=5,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KNearestMeanFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=9 ^
-k=5
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KNearestMeanFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filtery=7 ^
--filtery=9 -k=5
```

7.9.11 LaplacianFilter

Performs a Laplacian filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
variant	Optional variant value. Options include 3x3(1), 3x3(2), 3x3(3), 3x3(4), 5x5(1), and 5x5(2) (default is 3x3(1))
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

Python function:

```
laplacian_filter(
    i,
    output,
    variant="3x3(1)",
    clip=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LaplacianFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif ^
--variant='3x3(1)' --clip=1.0
```

7.9.12 LaplacianOfGaussianFilter

Performs a Laplacian-of-Gaussian (LoG) filter on an image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
sigma	Standard deviation in pixels

```
laplacian_of_gaussian_filter(
    i,
    output,
    sigma=0.75,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LaplacianOfGaussianFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --sigma=2.0
```

7.9.13 LeeFilter

Performs a Lee (Sigma) smoothing filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
sigma	Sigma value should be related to the standarad deviation of the distribution of image speckle noise
-m	M-threshold value the minimum allowable number of pixels within the intensity range

```
lee_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    sigma=10.0,
    m=5.0,
```

callback=default callback)

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LeeFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=9 --sigma=10.0 ^
-m=5
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LeeFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filtery=7 --filtery=9 ^
--sigma=10.0 -m=5
```

7.9.14 LineDetectionFilter

Performs a line-detection filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
variant	Optional variant value. Options include 'v' (vertical), 'h' (horizontal), '45',
	and '135' (default is 'v')
absvals	Optional flag indicating whether outputs should be absolute values
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

Python function:

```
line_detection_filter(
    i,
    output,
    variant="vertical",
    absvals=False,
    clip=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LineDetectionFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --variant=h ^
--clip=1.0
```

7.9.15 MajorityFilter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the most frequently occurring value (mode) in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
majority_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MajorityFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.16 MaximumFilter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the maximum value in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
maximum_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MaximumFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.17 MeanFilter

Performs a mean filter (low-pass filter) on an input image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
mean_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=3,
    filtery=3,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MeanFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filterx=25 --filtery=25
```

7.9.18 MedianFilter

Performs a median filter on an input image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
sig_digits	Number of significant digits

```
median_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    sig_digits=2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MedianFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.19 MinimumFilter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the minimum value in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
minimum_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MinimumFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.20 OlympicFilter

Performs an olympic smoothing filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

Python function:

```
olympic_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=OlympicFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.21 PercentileFilter

Performs a percentile filter on an input image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction
sig_digits	Number of significant digits

```
percentile_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    sig_digits=2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentileFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.22 PrewittFilter

Performs a Prewitt edge-detection filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

Python function:

```
prewitt_filter(
    i,
    output,
    clip=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PrewittFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --clip=1.0
```

7.9.23 RangeFilter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the range of values in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input raster file	
-o,output	Output raster file	
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction	
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction	

Python function:

```
range_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RangeFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.24 RobertsCrossFilter

Performs a Robert's cross edge-detection filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

Python function:

```
roberts_cross_filter(
    i,
    output,
    clip=0.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RobertsCrossFilter -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --clip=1.0
```

7.9.25 ScharrFilter

Performs a Scharr edge-detection filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent

Python function:

```
scharr_filter(
   i,
   output,
   clip=0.0,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ScharrFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --clip=1.0
```

7.9.26 SobelFilter

Performs a Sobel edge-detection filter on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
variant	Optional variant value. Options include 3x3 and 5x5 (default is 3x3)
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent (default is 0.0)

```
sobel_filter(
   i,
```

```
output,
variant="3x3",
clip=0.0,
callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SobelFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --variant=5x5 --clip=1.0
```

7.9.27 Standard Deviation Filter

Assigns each cell in the output grid the standard deviation of values in a moving window centred on each grid cell in the input raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input raster file	
-o,output	Output raster file	
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction	
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction	

Python function:

```
standard_deviation_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StandardDeviationFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.9.28 TotalFilter

Performs a total filter on an input image.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
filterx	Size of the filter kernel in the x-direction
filtery	Size of the filter kernel in the y-direction

```
total_filter(
    i,
    output,
    filterx=11,
    filtery=11,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TotalFilter -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=image.tif -o=output.tif --filter=25
```

7.10 Image Processing Tools => Image Enhancement

7.10.1 BalanceContrastEnhancement

Performs a balance contrast enhancement on a colour-composite image of multispectral data.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input colour composite image file
-o,output	Output raster file
band_mean	Band mean value

Python function:

```
balance_contrast_enhancement(
    i,
    output,
    band_mean=100.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BalanceContrastEnhancement -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input=image.tif -o=output.tif ^
--band_mean=120
```

7.10.2 DirectDecorrelationStretch

Performs a direct decorrelation stretch enhancement on a colour-composite image of multispectral data.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input colour composite image file
-o,output	Output raster file
-k	Achromatic factor (k) ranges between 0 (no effect) and 1 (full saturation
	stretch), although typical values range from 0.3 to 0.7
clip	Optional percent to clip the upper tail by during the stretch

Python function:

```
direct_decorrelation_stretch(
    i,
    output,
    k=0.5,
    clip=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DirectDecorrelationStretch -v ^ --wd="/path/to/data/" --input=image.tif -o=output.tif -k=0.4
```

7.10.3 GammaCorrection

Performs a sigmoidal contrast stretch on input images.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
gamma	Gamma value

```
gamma_correction(
    i,
    output,
    gamma=0.5,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=GammaCorrection -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --gamma=0.5
```

7.10.4 HistogramEqualization

Performs a histogram equalization contrast enhancment on an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
num_tones	Number of tones in the output image

Python function:

```
histogram_equalization(
    i,
    output,
    num_tones=256,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HistogramEqualization -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif ^
--num_tones=1024
```

7.10.5 HistogramMatching

Alters the statistical distribution of a raster image matching it to a specified PDF.

Flag	Description
-i,input histo_file	Input raster file Input reference probability distribution function (pdf) text file
_	Output raster file

```
histogram_matching(
    i,
    histo_file,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HistogramMatching -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input1.tif --histo_file=histo.txt ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.10.6 HistogramMatchingTwoImages

This tool alters the cumulative distribution function of a raster image to that of another image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input raster file to modify
i2,input2	Input reference raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
histogram_matching_two_images(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HistogramMatchingTwoImages -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --i1=input1.tif --i2=input2.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.10.7 MinMaxContrastStretch

Performs a min-max contrast stretch on an input greytone image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
min_val	Lower tail clip value
max_val	Upper tail clip value
num_tones	Number of tones in the output image

Python function:

```
min_max_contrast_stretch(
    i,
    output,
    min_val,
    max_val,
    num_tones=256,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=MinMaxContrastStretch -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif ^
--min_val=45.0 --max_val=200.0 --num_tones=1024
```

7.10.8 PanchromaticSharpening

Increases the spatial resolution of image data by combining multispectral bands with panchromatic data.

Flag	Description
red	Input red band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
green	Input green band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
blue	Input blue band image file. Optionally specified if colour-composite not specified
composite	Input colour-composite image file. Only used if individual bands are not specified

Flag	Description
pan	Input panchromatic band file
-o,output	Output colour composite file
method	Options include 'brovey' (default) and 'ihs'

```
panchromatic_sharpening(
    pan,
    output,
    red=None,
    green=None,
    blue=None,
    composite=None,
    method="brovey",
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PanchromaticSharpening -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --red=red.tif --green=green.tif ^
--blue=blue.tif --pan=pan.tif --output=pan_sharp.tif ^
--method='brovey'
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PanchromaticSharpening ^
-v --wd="/path/to/data/" --composite=image.tif --pan=pan.tif ^
--output=pan_sharp.tif --method='ihs'
```

7.10.9 PercentageContrastStretch

Performs a percentage linear contrast stretch on input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
clip	Optional amount to clip the distribution tails by, in percent
tail	Specified which tails to clip; options include 'upper', 'lower', and 'both'
	(default is 'both')
num_tones	Number of tones in the output image

```
percentage_contrast_stretch(
    i,
    output,
    clip=0.0,
    tail="both",
    num_tones=256,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=PercentageContrastStretch -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --clip=2.0 ^
--tail='both' --num_tones=1024
```

7.10.10 SigmoidalContrastStretch

Performs a sigmoidal contrast stretch on input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
cutoff	Cutoff value between 0.0 and 0.95
gain	Gain value
num_tones	Number of tones in the output image

Python function:

```
sigmoidal_contrast_stretch(
   i,
   output,
   cutoff=0.0,
   gain=1.0,
   num_tones=256,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SigmoidalContrastStretch -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --cutoff=0.1 ^
--gain=2.0 --num tones=1024
```

7.10.11 StandardDeviationContrastStretch

Performs a standard-deviation contrast stretch on input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
clip,stdev	Standard deviation clip value
num_tones	Number of tones in the output image

Python function:

```
standard_deviation_contrast_stretch(
   i,
   output,
   stdev=2.0,
   num_tones=256,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StandardDeviationContrastStretch -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif --stdev=2.0 ^
--num_tones=1024
```

7.11 LiDAR Tools

7.11.1 BlockMaximum

Creates a block-maximum raster from an input LAS file. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool grids all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input LiDAR file	
-o,output	Output file	
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution	

```
block_maximum(
   i=None,
   output=None,
   resolution=1.0,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BlockMaximum -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=file.las -o=outfile.tif --resolution=2.0"
./whitebox_tools ^
-r=BlockMaximum -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las ^
-o=outfile.tif --resolution=5.0 --palette=light_quant.plt
```

7.11.2 BlockMinimum

Creates a block-minimum raster from an input LAS file. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool grids all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input LiDAR file	
-o,output	Output file	
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution	

Python function:

```
block_minimum(
   i=None,
   output=None,
   resolution=1.0,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=BlockMinimum -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=file.las -o=outfile.tif --resolution=2.0"
./whitebox_tools ^
-r=BlockMinimum -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las ^
-o=outfile.tif --resolution=5.0 --palette=light quant.plt
```

7.11.3 FilterLidarScanAngles

Removes points in a LAS file with scan angles greater than a threshold.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input LiDAR file	
-o,output	Output LiDAR file	
threshold	Scan angle threshold	

Python function:

```
filter_lidar_scan_angles(
    i,
    output,
    threshold,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FilterLidarScanAngles -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--threshold=10.0
```

7.11.4 FindFlightlineEdgePoints

Identifies points along a flightline's edge in a LAS file.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output file

Python function:

```
find_flightline_edge_points(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindFlightlineEdgePoints -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las"
```

7.11.5 FlightlineOverlap

Reads a LiDAR (LAS) point file and outputs a raster containing the number of overlapping flight lines in each grid cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output file
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution

Python function:

```
flightline_overlap(
    i=None,
    output=None,
    resolution=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FlightlineOverlap -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las -o=outfile.tif ^
--resolution=2.0"
./whitebox_tools -r=FlightlineOverlap -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las -o=outfile.tif ^
--resolution=5.0 --palette=light_quant.plt
```

7.11.6 LasToAscii

Converts one or more LAS files into ASCII text files.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input LiDAR files

```
las_to_ascii(
    inputs,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LasToAscii -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i="file1.las, file2.las, file3.las" -o=outfile.las"
```

7.11.7 LidarColourize

Adds the red-green-blue colour fields of a LiDAR (LAS) file based on an input image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
in_lidar	Input LiDAR file
in_image	Input colour image file
-o,output	Output LiDAR file

Python function:

```
lidar_colourize(
    in_lidar,
    in_image,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarColourize -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--in_lidar="input.las" --in_image="image.tif" ^
-o="output.las"
```

7.11.8 LidarElevationSlice

Outputs all of the points within a LiDAR (LAS) point file that lie between a specified elevation range.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output LiDAR file

Flag	Description
minz	Minimum elevation value (optional)
maxz	Maximum elevation value (optional)
class	Optional boolean flag indicating whether points outside the range should be retained in output but reclassified
inclassval	Optional parameter specifying the class value assigned to points within the slice
outclassval	Optional parameter specifying the class value assigned to points within the slice

```
lidar_elevation_slice(
    i,
    output,
    minz=None,
    maxz=None,
    cls=False,
    inclassval=2,
    outclassval=1,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarElevationSlice -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--minz=100.0 --maxz=250.0
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=LidarElevationSlice -v -i="/path/to/data/input.las" ^
-o="/path/to/data/output.las" --minz=100.0 --maxz=250.0 ^
--class
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarElevationSlice -v ^
-i="/path/to/data/input.las" -o="/path/to/data/output.las" ^
--minz=100.0 --maxz=250.0 --inclassval=1 --outclassval=0
```

7.11.9 LidarGroundPointFilter

Identifies ground points within LiDAR dataset using a slope-based method.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output LiDAR file
radius	Search Radius
slope_threshold	Maximum inter-point slope to be considered an off-terrain point
height_threshold	Inter-point height difference to be considered an off-terrain point

```
lidar_ground_point_filter(
    i,
    output,
    radius=2.0,
    slope_threshold=45.0,
    height_threshold=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarGroundPointFilter -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--radius=10.0
```

7.11.10 LidarHillshade

Calculates a hillshade value for points within a LAS file and stores these data in the RGB field.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output file
azimuth	Illumination source azimuth in degrees
altitude	Illumination source altitude in degrees
radius	Search Radius

```
lidar_hillshade(
    i,
    output,
    azimuth=315.0,
    altitude=30.0,
    radius=1.0,
```

callback=default callback)

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarHillshade -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i="input.las" -o="output.las" --radius=10.0
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=LidarHillshade -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" ^
-o="output.las" --azimuth=180.0 --altitude=20.0 --radius=1.0
```

7.11.11 LidarHistogram

Creates a histogram from LiDAR data.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)
parameter	Parameter; options are 'elevation' (default), 'intensity', 'scan angle', 'class
clip	Amount to clip distribution tails (in percent)

Python function:

```
lidar_histogram(
    i,
    output,
    parameter="elevation",
    clip=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarHistogram -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i="file1.tif, file2.tif, file3.tif" -o=outfile.htm ^
--contiguity=Bishopsl
```

7.11.12 LidarIdwInterpolation

Interpolates LAS files using an inverse-distance weighted (IDW) scheme. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool interpolates all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file (including extension)
-o,output	Output raster file (including extension)
parameter	Interpolation parameter; options are 'elevation' (default), 'intensity',
	ʻclass', ʻscan angle', ʻuser data'
returns	Point return types to include; options are 'all' (default), 'last', 'first'
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution
weight	IDW weight value
radius	Search Radius
exclude_cls	Optional exclude classes from interpolation; Valid class values range from 0 to
	18, based on LAS specifications. Example, -exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18'
minz	Optional minimum elevation for inclusion in interpolation
maxz	Optional maximum elevation for inclusion in interpolation

```
lidar_idw_interpolation(
    i=None,
    output=None,
    parameter="elevation",
    returns="all",
    resolution=1.0,
    weight=1.0,
    radius=2.5,
    exclude_cls=None,
    minz=None,
    maxz=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarIdwInterpolation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las -o=outfile.tif ^
--resolution=2.0 --radius=5.0"
./whitebox_tools ^
-r=LidarIdwInterpolation --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las ^
-o=outfile.tif --resolution=5.0 --weight=2.0 --radius=2.0 ^
--exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18' --palette=light_quant.plt
```

7.11.13 LidarInfo

Prints information about a LiDAR (LAS) dataset, including header, point return frequency, and classification data and information about the variable length records (VLRs) and geokeys.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output HTML file for regression summary report
vlr	Flag indicating whether or not to print the variable length records (VLRs)
geokeys	Flag indicating whether or not to print the geokeys

Python function:

```
lidar_info(
    i,
    output=None,
    vlr=False,
    geokeys=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarInfo -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=file.las --vlr --geokeys"
./whitebox_tools -r=LidarInfo ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las
```

7.11.14 LidarJoin

Joins multiple LiDAR (LAS) files into a single LAS file.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input LiDAR files
-o,output	Output LiDAR file

Python function:

```
lidar_join(
   inputs,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarJoin -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
```

```
-i="file1.las, file2.las, file3.las" -o=outfile.las"
```

7.11.15 LidarKappaIndex

Performs a kappa index of agreement (KIA) analysis on the classifications of two LAS files.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input LiDAR classification file
i2,input2	Input LiDAR reference file
-o,output	Output HTML file

Python function:

```
lidar_kappa_index(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarKappaIndex -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --i1=class.tif --i2=reference.tif ^
-o=kia.html
```

7.11.16 LidarNearestNeighbourGridding

Grids LAS files using nearest-neighbour scheme. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool grids all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file (including extension)
-o,output	Output raster file (including extension)
parameter	Interpolation parameter; options are 'elevation' (default), 'intensity',
	'class', 'scan angle', 'user data'
returns	Point return types to include; options are 'all' (default), 'last', 'first'
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution
radius	Search Radius

Flag	Description	
exclude_cls	Optional exclude classes from interpolation; Valid class values range from 0 to	
	18, based on LAS specifications. Example, -exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18'	
minz	Optional minimum elevation for inclusion in interpolation	
maxz	Optional maximum elevation for inclusion in interpolation	

```
lidar_nearest_neighbour_gridding(
    i=None,
    output=None,
    parameter="elevation",
    returns="all",
    resolution=1.0,
    radius=2.5,
    exclude_cls=None,
    minz=None,
    maxz=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarNearestNeighbourGridding -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las -o=outfile.tif ^
--resolution=2.0 --radius=5.0"
./whitebox_tools ^
-r=LidarNearestNeighbourGridding --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=file.las -o=outfile.tif --resolution=5.0 --radius=2.0 ^
--exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18' --palette=light_quant.plt
```

7.11.17 LidarPointDensity

Calculates the spatial pattern of point density for a LiDAR data set. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool grids all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file (including extension)
-o,output	Output raster file (including extension)
returns	Point return types to include; options are 'all' (default), 'last', 'first'
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution
radius	Search Radius

Flag	Description	
exclude_cls	Optional exclude classes from interpolation; Valid class values range from 0 t	
	18, based on LAS specifications. Example, -exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18'	
minz	Optional minimum elevation for inclusion in interpolation	
maxz	Optional maximum elevation for inclusion in interpolation	

```
lidar_point_density(
    i=None,
    output=None,
    returns="all",
    resolution=1.0,
    radius=2.5,
    exclude_cls=None,
    minz=None,
    maxz=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarPointDensity -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las -o=outfile.tif ^
--resolution=2.0 --radius=5.0"
./whitebox_tools ^
-r=LidarPointDensity -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las ^
-o=outfile.tif --resolution=5.0 --radius=2.0 ^
--exclude_cls='3,4,5,6,7,18' --palette=light_quant.plt
```

7.11.18 LidarPointStats

Creates several rasters summarizing the distribution of LAS point data. When the input/output parameters are not specified, the tool works on all LAS files contained within the working directory.

Flag	Description
	- Section - Sect
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
resolution	Output raster's grid resolution
num_points	Flag indicating whether or not to output the number of points raster
num_pulses	Flag indicating whether or not to output the number of pulses raster
z_range	Flag indicating whether or not to output the elevation range raster
intensity_range	Flag indicating whether or not to output the intensity range raster

Flag	Description
predom_class	Flag indicating whether or not to output the predominant classification raster

```
lidar_point_stats(
    i=None,
    resolution=1.0,
    num_points=False,
    num_pulses=False,
    z_range=False,
    intensity_range=False,
    predom_class=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarPointStats -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=file.las --resolution=1.0 ^
--num_points
```

7.11.19 LidarRemoveDuplicates

Removes duplicate points from a LiDAR data set.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output LiDAR file
include_z	Include z-values in point comparison?

Python function:

```
lidar_remove_duplicates(
    i,
    output,
    include_z=False,
    callback=default callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarRemoveDuplicates -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las"
```

7.11.20 LidarRemoveOutliers

Removes outliers (high and low points) in a LiDAR point cloud.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output LiDAR file
radius	Search Radius
elev_diff	Max. elevation difference

Python function:

```
lidar_remove_outliers(
    i,
    output,
    radius=2.0,
    elev_diff=50.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarRemoveOutliers -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--radius=10.0 --elev_diff=25.0
```

7.11.21 LidarSegmentation

Segments a LiDAR point cloud based on normal vectors.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output file
dist,radius	Search Radius
norm_diff	Maximum difference in normal vectors, in degrees
maxzdiff	Maximum difference in elevation (z units) between neighbouring points of the
	same segment

```
lidar_segmentation(
    i,
    output,
    radius=5.0,
    norm_diff=10.0,
    maxzdiff=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarSegmentation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--radius=10.0 --norm_diff=2.5 --maxzdiff=0.75
```

7.11.22 LidarSegmentationBasedFilter

Identifies ground points within LiDAR point clouds using a segmentation based approach.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output file
dist,radius	Search Radius
norm_diff	Maximum difference in normal vectors, in degrees
maxzdiff	Maximum difference in elevation (z units) between neighbouring points of the
	same segment
classify	Classify points as ground (2) or off-ground (1)

Python function:

```
lidar_segmentation_based_filter(
    i,
    output,
    radius=5.0,
    norm_diff=2.0,
    maxzdiff=1.0,
    classify=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarSegmentationBasedFilter -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--radius=10.0 --norm_diff=2.5 --maxzdiff=0.75 --classify
```

7.11.23 LidarTile

Tiles a LiDAR LAS file into multiple LAS files.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
width_x	Width of tiles in the X dimension; default 1000.0
width_y	Width of tiles in the Y dimension
origin_x	Origin point X coordinate for tile grid
origin_y	Origin point Y coordinate for tile grid
min_points	Minimum number of points contained in a tile for it to be saved

Python function:

```
lidar_tile(
    i,
    width_x=1000.0,
    width_y=1000.0,
    origin_x=0.0,
    origin_y=0.0,
    min_points=0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarTile -v -i=/path/to/data/input.las ^
--width_x=1000.0 --width_y=2500.0 -=min_points=100
```

7.11.24 LidarTophatTransform

Performs a white top-hat transform on a Lidar dataset; as an estimate of height above ground, this is useful for modelling the vegetation canopy.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output LiDAR file
radius	Search Radius

```
lidar_tophat_transform(
    i,
    output,
    radius=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LidarTophatTransform -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="input.las" -o="output.las" ^
--radius=10.0
```

7.11.25 NormalVectors

Calculates normal vectors for points within a LAS file and stores these data (XYZ vector components) in the RGB field.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input LiDAR file
-o,output	Output LiDAR file
radius	Search Radius

Python function:

```
normal_vectors(
    i,
    output,
    radius=1.0,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NormalVectors -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i="input.las" -o="output.las" --radius=10.0
```

7.12 Math and Stats Tools

7.12.1 AbsoluteValue

Calculates the absolute value of every cell in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
absolute_value(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=AbsoluteValue -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.2 Add

Performs an addition operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
add(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Add -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.3 And

Performs a logical AND operator on two Boolean raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
And(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=And -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.4 Anova

Performs an analysis of variance (ANOVA) test on a raster dataset.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
features	Feature definition (or class) raster
-o,output	Output HTML file

Python function:

```
anova(
i,
```

```
features,
output,
callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Anova -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=data.tif --features=classes.tif -o=anova.html
```

7.12.5 ArcCos

Returns the inverse cosine (arccos) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
arc_cos(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ArcCos -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.6 ArcSin

Returns the inverse sine (arcsin) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
arc_sin(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ArcSin -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.7 ArcTan

Returns the inverse tangent (arctan) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
arc_tan(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ArcTan -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.8 Atan2

Returns the 2-argument inverse tangent (atan2).

Flag	Description
input_y input_x	Input y raster file or constant value (rise) Input x raster file or constant value (run)
-o,output	Output raster file

```
atan2(
    input_y,
    input_x,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Atan2 -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input_y='in1.tif' --input_x='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.9 Ceil

Returns the smallest (closest to negative infinity) value that is greater than or equal to the values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
ceil(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Ceil -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.10 Cos

Returns the cosine (cos) of each values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file

```
cos(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Cos -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.11 Cosh

Returns the hyperbolic cosine (cosh) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
cosh(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Cosh -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.12 CrispnessIndex

Calculates the Crispness Index, which is used to quantify how crisp (or conversely how fuzzy) a probability image is.

Flag	Description
-i,input -o,output	Input raster file Optional output html file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

```
crispness_index(
   i,
   output=None,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CrispnessIndex -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=input.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CrispnessIndex -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -o=crispness.html
```

7.12.13 CrossTabulation

Performs a cross-tabulation on two categorical images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input raster file 1
i2,input2	Input raster file 1
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

Python function:

```
cross_tabulation(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CrossTabulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --i1="file1.tif" --i2="file2.tif" ^
-o=outfile.html
```

7.12.14 Cumulative Distribution

Converts a raster image to its cumulative distribution function.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
cumulative_distribution(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=CumulativeDistribution -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.12.15 Decrement

Decreases the values of each grid cell in an input raster by 1.0 (see also InPlaceSubtract).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
decrement(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Decrement -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.16 Divide

Performs a division operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
divide(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Divide -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.17 EqualTo

Performs a equal-to comparison operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1 input2	Input raster file or constant value Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
equal_to(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=EqualTo -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.18 Exp

Returns the exponential (base e) of values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
exp(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Exp -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.19 Exp2

Returns the exponential (base 2) of values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
exp2(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Exp2 -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.20 ExtractRasterStatistics

Extracts descriptive statistics for a group of patches in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input data raster file
features	Input feature definition raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
stat	Statistic to extract
out_table	Output HTML Table file

Python function:

```
extract_raster_statistics(
    i,
    features,
    output=None,
    stat="average",
    out_table=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ExtractRasterStatistics -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i='input.tif' --features='groups.tif' ^
-o='output.tif' --stat='minimum'
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=ExtractRasterStatistics -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' --features='groups.tif' ^
--out table='output.html'
```

7.12.21 Floor

Returns the largest (closest to positive infinity) value that is less than or equal to the values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
floor(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Floor -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o='output.tif'
```

7.12.22 GreaterThan

Performs a greater-than comparison operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file
incl_equals	Perform a greater-than-or-equal-to operation

Python function:

```
greater_than(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   incl_equals=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=GreaterThan -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--incl_equals
```

7.12.23 ImageAutocorrelation

Performs Moran's I analysis on two or more input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
contiguity	Contiguity type
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

Python function:

```
image_autocorrelation(
   inputs,
   output,
   contiguity="Rook",
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ImageAutocorrelation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="file1.tif, file2.tif, file3.tif" ^
-o=outfile.html --contiguity=Bishops
```

7.12.24 ImageCorrelation

Performs image correlation on two or more input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,inputs	Input raster files
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

Python function:

```
image_correlation(
   inputs,
   output=None,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ImageCorrelation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="file1.tif, file2.tif, file3.tif" ^
-o=outfile.html
```

7.12.25 ImageRegression

Performs image regression analysis on two input images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input raster file (independent variable, X)
i2,input2	Input raster file (dependent variable, Y)
-o,output	Output HTML file for regression summary report
out_residuals	Output raster regression resdidual file
standardize	Optional flag indicating whether to standardize the residuals map

Python function:

```
image_regression(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   out_residuals=None,
   standardize=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ImageRegression -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --i1='file1.tif' --i2='file2.tif' ^
-o='outfile.html' --out_residuals='residuals.tif' ^
--standardize
```

7.12.26 InPlaceAdd

Performs an in-place addition operation (input1 += input2).

Flag	Description	
input1	Input raster file	

Flag	Description	
input2	Input raster file or constant value	

```
in_place_add(
    input1,
    input2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceAdd -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif'"
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=InPlaceAdd -v --wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' ^
--input2=10.5'
```

7.12.27 InPlaceDivide

Performs an in-place division operation (input1 /= input2).

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
input1	Input raster file	
input2	Input raster file or constant value	

Python function:

```
in_place_divide(
    input1,
    input2,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceDivide -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif'"
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=InPlaceDivide -v --wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' ^
--input2=10.5'
```

7.12.28 InPlaceMultiply

Performs an in-place multiplication operation (input1 *= input2).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file or constant value

Python function:

```
in_place_multiply(
   input1,
   input2,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceMultiply -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' ^
--input2='in2.tif'"
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceMultiply -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' --input2=10.5'
```

7.12.29 InPlaceSubtract

Performs an in-place subtraction operation (input1 -= input2).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file or constant value

Python function:

```
in_place_subtract(
   input1,
   input2,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceSubtract -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' ^
--input2='in2.tif'"
>>./whitebox_tools -r=InPlaceSubtract -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' --input2=10.5'
```

7.12.30 Increment

Increases the values of each grid cell in an input raster by 1.0. (see also InPlaceAdd).

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
increment(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Increment -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.31 Integer Division

Performs an integer division operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
integer_division(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=IntegerDivision -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.12.32 IsNoData

Identifies NoData valued pixels in an image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description	
-i,input	Input raster file	
-o,output	Output raster file	

Python function:

```
is_no_data(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=IsNoData -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.33 KSTestForNormality

Evaluates whether the values in a raster are normally distributed.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output HTML file

Flag	Description
num_samples	Number of samples. Leave blank to use whole image

```
ks_test_for_normality(
    i,
    output,
    num_samples=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KSTestForNormality -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.html ^
--num_samples=1000
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KSTestForNormality -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.html
```

7.12.34 KappaIndex

Performs a kappa index of agreement (KIA) analysis on two categorical raster files.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
i1,input1	Input classification raster file
i2,input2	Input reference raster file
-o,output	Output HTML file

Python function:

```
kappa_index(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=KappaIndex -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --i1=class.tif --i2=reference.tif -o=kia.html
```

7.12.35 LessThan

Performs a less-than comparison operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file
incl_equals	Perform a less-than-or-equal-to operation

Python function:

```
less_than(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   incl_equals=False,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LessThan -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif ^
--incl_equals
```

7.12.36 Ln

Returns the natural logarithm of values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
ln(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Ln -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.37 Log10

Returns the base-10 logarithm of values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
log10(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Log10 -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.38 Log2

Returns the base-2 logarithm of values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
log2(
   i,
   output,
```

callback=default_callback)

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Log2 -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.39 Max

Performs a MAX operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1 input2	Input raster file or constant value Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
max(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Max -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.40 Min

Performs a MIN operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

```
min(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Min -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.41 Modulo

Performs a modulo operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
modulo(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Modulo -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.42 Multiply

Performs a multiplication operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

```
multiply(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Multiply -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.43 Negate

Changes the sign of values in a raster or the 0-1 values of a Boolean raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
negate(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Negate -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.44 Not

Performs a logical NOT operator on two Boolean raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
Not(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Not -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.45 NotEqualTo

Performs a not-equal-to comparison operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1 input2	Input raster file or constant value Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
not_equal_to(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=NotEqualTo -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.46 Or

Performs a logical OR operator on two Boolean raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
Or(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Or -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.47 Power

Raises the values in grid cells of one rasters, or a constant value, by values in another raster or constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
power(
    input1,
    input2,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Power -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.48 Quantiles

Transforms raster values into quantiles.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
num_quantiles	Number of quantiles

Python function:

```
quantiles(
    i,
    output,
    num_quantiles=4,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Quantiles -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif --num_quantiles=5
```

7.12.49 RandomField

Creates an image containing random values.

Flag	Description
-i,base	Input raster file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file

```
random_field(
   base,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RandomField -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--base=in.tif -o=out.tif
```

7.12.50 RandomSample

Creates an image containing randomly located sample grid cells with unique IDs.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,base	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
num_samples	Number of samples

Python function:

```
random_sample(
   base,
   output,
   num_samples=1000,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RandomSample -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--base=in.tif -o=out.tif --num_samples=1000
```

7.12.51 RasterHistogram

Creates a histogram from raster values.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output HTML file (default name will be based on input file if unspecified)

Python function:

```
raster_histogram(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RasterHistogram -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i="file1.tif" -o=outfile.html
```

7.12.52 RasterSummaryStats

Measures a rasters average, standard deviation, num. non-nodata cells, and total.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file

Python function:

```
raster_summary_stats(
   i,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RasterSummaryStats -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif
```

7.12.53 Reciprocal

Returns the reciprocal (i.e. 1/z) of values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
reciprocal(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Reciprocal -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.54 RescaleValueRange

Performs a min-max contrast stretch on an input greytone image.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
out_min_val	New minimum value in output image
out_max_val	New maximum value in output image
clip_min	Optional lower tail clip value
clip_max	Optional upper tail clip value

Python function:

```
rescale_value_range(
    i,
    output,
    out_min_val,
    out_max_val,
    clip_min=None,
    clip_max=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RescaleValueRange -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif -o=output.tif ^
--out_min_val=0.0 --out_max_val=1.0
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=RescaleValueRange -v --wd="/path/to/data/" -i=input.tif ^
-o=output.tif --out_min_val=0.0 --out_max_val=1.0 ^
--clip_min=45.0 --clip_max=200.0
```

7.12.55 RootMeanSquareError

Calculates the RMSE and other accuracy statistics.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
base	Input base raster file used for comparison

Python function:

```
root_mean_square_error(
    i,
    base,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RootMeanSquareError -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" -i=DEM.tif
```

7.12.56 Round

Rounds the values in an input raster to the nearest integer value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
round(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Round -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.57 Sin

Returns the sine (sin) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
sin(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Sin -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ -i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.58 Sinh

Returns the hyperbolic sine (sinh) of each values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
sinh(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Sinh -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.59 Square

Squares the values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
square(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Square -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.60 SquareRoot

Returns the square root of the values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
square_root(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=SquareRoot -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.61 Subtract

Performs a differencing operation on two rasters or a raster and a constant value.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file or constant value
input2	Input raster file or constant value
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
subtract(
  input1,
  input2,
  output,
  callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Subtract -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.62 Tan

Returns the tangent (tan) of each values in a raster.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file

```
i,
  output,
  callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Tan -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.63 Tanh

Returns the hyperbolic tangent (tanh) of each values in a raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
tanh(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Tanh -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.64 ToDegrees

Converts a raster from radians to degrees.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

```
to_degrees(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ToDegrees -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.65 ToRadians

Converts a raster from degrees to radians.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
to_radians(
    i,
    output,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ToRadians -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.66 Truncate

Truncates the values in a raster to the desired number of decimal places.

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
num_decimals	Number of decimals left after truncation (default is zero)

```
truncate(
    i,
    output,
    num_decimals=None,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Truncate -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i='input.tif' -o=output.tif --num_decimals=2
```

7.12.67 TurningBandsSimulation

Creates an image containing random values based on a turning-bands simulation.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,base	Input base raster file
-o,output	Output file
range	The field's range, in xy-units, related to the extent of spatial autocorrelation
iterations	The number of iterations

Python function:

```
turning_bands_simulation(
   base,
   output,
   range,
   iterations=1000,
   callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TurningBandsSimulation -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --base=in.tif -o=out.tif --range=850.0 ^
--iterations=2500
```

7.12.68 Xor

Performs a logical XOR operator on two Boolean raster images.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
input1	Input raster file
input2	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
xor(
   input1,
   input2,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=Xor -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^ --input1='in1.tif' --input2='in2.tif' -o=output.tif
```

7.12.69 ZScores

Standardizes the values in an input raster by converting to z-scores.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,input	Input raster file
-o,output	Output raster file

Python function:

```
z_scores(
   i,
   output,
   callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ZScores -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
-i=DEM.tif -o=output.tif
```

7.13 Stream Network Analysis

7.13.1 DistanceToOutlet

Calculates the distance of stream grid cells to the channel network outlet cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
distance_to_outlet(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DistanceToOutlet -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=DistanceToOutlet -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.2 ExtractStreams

Extracts stream grid cells from a flow accumulation raster.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
flow_accum	Input raster D8 flow accumulation file
-o,output	Output raster file
threshold	Threshold in flow accumulation values for channelization
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
extract_streams(
    flow_accum,
    output,
    threshold,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ExtractStreams -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--flow_accum='d8accum.tif' -o='output.tif' --threshold=100.0 ^
--zero_background
```

7.13.3 ExtractValleys

Identifies potential valley bottom grid cells based on local topolography alone.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
variant	Options include 'lq' (lower quartile), 'JandR' (Johnston and Rosenfeld), and
	'PandD' (Peucker and Douglas); default is 'lq'
line_thin	Optional flag indicating whether post-processing line-thinning should be
	performed
filter	Optional argument (only used when variant='lq') providing the filter size, in grid cells, used for lq-filtering (default is 5)

Python function:

```
extract_valleys(
dem,
```

```
output,
variant="Lower Quartile",
line_thin=True,
filter=5,
callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ExtractValleys -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--dem=pointer.tif -o=out.tif --variant='JandR' ^
--line_thin
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ExtractValleys -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --dem=pointer.tif -o=out.tif ^
--variant='lq' --filter=7 --line_thin
```

7.13.4 FarthestChannelHead

Calculates the distance to the furthest upstream channel head for each stream cell.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
farthest_channel_head(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FarthestChannelHead -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FarthestChannelHead -v ^
```

```
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.5 FindMainStem

Finds the main stem, based on stream lengths, of each stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
find_main_stem(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindMainStem -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=FindMainStem -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.6 HackStreamOrder

Assigns the Hack stream order to each tributary in a stream network.

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file

Flag	Description
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

```
hack_stream_order(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HackStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HackStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.7 HortonStreamOrder

Assigns the Horton stream order to each tributary in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
horton_stream_order(
d8_pntr,
streams,
```

```
output,
esri_pntr=False,
zero_background=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HortonStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=HortonStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.8 LengthOfUpstreamChannels

Calculates the total length of channels upstream.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
length_of_upstream_channels(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LengthOfUpstreamChannels -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LengthOfUpstreamChannels -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
```

```
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.9 LongProfile

Plots the stream longitudinal profiles for one or more rivers.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output HTML file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
long_profile(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    dem,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LongProfile -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif --dem=dem.tif ^
-o=output.html --esri_pntr
```

7.13.10 LongProfileFromPoints

Plots the longitudinal profiles from flow-paths initiating from a set of vector points.

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
points	Input vector points file
dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output HTML file

Flag	Description
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

```
long_profile_from_points(
    d8_pntr,
    points,
    dem,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=LongProfileFromPoints -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --points=stream_head.shp ^
--dem=dem.tif -o=output.html --esri_pntr
```

7.13.11 RasterizeStreams

Rasterizes vector streams based on Lindsay (2016) method.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
streams	Input vector streams file
base	Input base raster file
-o,output	Output raster file
nodata	Use NoData value for background?
feature_id	Use feature number as output value?

Python function:

```
rasterize_streams(
    streams,
    base,
    output,
    nodata=True,
    feature_id=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RasterizeStreams -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --streams=streams.shp --base=raster.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.13.12 RemoveShortStreams

Removes short first-order streams from a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
min_length	Minimum tributary length (in map units) used for network prunning
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme

Python function:

```
remove_short_streams(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    min_length,
    esri_pntr=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=RemoveShortStreams -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
```

7.13.13 ShreveStreamMagnitude

Assigns the Shreve stream magnitude to each link in a stream network.

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

```
shreve_stream_magnitude(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ShreveStreamMagnitude -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=ShreveStreamMagnitude -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.14 StrahlerStreamOrder

Assigns the Strahler stream order to each link in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
strahler_stream_order(
   d8_pntr,
   streams,
   output,
```

```
esri_pntr=False,
zero_background=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StrahlerStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StrahlerStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.15 StreamLinkClass

Identifies the exterior/interior links and nodes in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
stream_link_class(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkClass -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkClass -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.16 StreamLinkIdentifier

Assigns a unique identifier to each link in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
stream_link_identifier(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkIdentifier -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkIdentifier -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.17 StreamLinkLength

Estimates the length of each link (or tributary) in a stream network.

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
linkid	Input raster streams link ID (or tributary ID) file

Flag	Description
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

```
stream_link_length(
    d8_pntr,
    linkid,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkLength -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --linkid=streamsID.tif ^
--dem=dem.tif -o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=StreamLinkLength -v --wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif ^
--linkid=streamsID.tif --dem=dem.tif -o=output.tif --esri_pntr ^
--zero_background
```

7.13.18 StreamLinkSlope

Estimates the average slope of each link (or tributary) in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
linkid	Input raster streams link ID (or tributary ID) file
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
stream_link_slope(
    d8_pntr,
```

```
linkid,
dem,
output,
esri_pntr=False,
zero_background=False,
callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamLinkSlope -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --linkid=streamsID.tif ^
--dem=dem.tif -o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=StreamLinkSlope -v --wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif ^
--linkid=streamsID.tif --dem=dem.tif -o=output.tif --esri_pntr ^
--zero_background
```

7.13.19 StreamSlopeContinuous

Estimates the slope of each grid cell in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-i,dem	Input raster DEM file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
stream_slope_continuous(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    dem,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=StreamSlopeContinuous -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --linkid=streamsID.tif ^
--dem=dem.tif -o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools ^
-r=StreamSlopeContinuous -v --wd="/path/to/data/" ^
--d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streamsID.tif --dem=dem.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

7.13.20 TopologicalStreamOrder

Assigns each link in a stream network its topological order.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
topological_stream_order(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TopologicalStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TopologicalStreamOrder -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri pntr --zero background
```

7.13.21 TributaryIdentifier

Assigns a unique identifier to each tributary in a stream network.

Parameters:

Flag	Description
d8_pntr	Input raster D8 pointer file
streams	Input raster streams file
-o,output	Output raster file
esri_pntr	D8 pointer uses the ESRI style scheme
zero_background	Flag indicating whether a background value of zero should be used

Python function:

```
tributary_identifier(
    d8_pntr,
    streams,
    output,
    esri_pntr=False,
    zero_background=False,
    callback=default_callback)
```

Command-line Interface:

```
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TributaryIdentifier -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif
>>./whitebox_tools -r=TributaryIdentifier -v ^
--wd="/path/to/data/" --d8_pntr=D8.tif --streams=streams.tif ^
-o=output.tif --esri_pntr --zero_background
```

8. Contributing

If you would like to contribute to the project as a developer, follow these instructions to get started:

- 1. Fork the larger Whitebox project (in which whitebox-tools exists) (https://github.com/jblindsay/whitebox-geospatial-analysis-tools)
- 2. Create your feature branch (git checkout -b my-new-feature)
- 3. Commit your changes (git commit -am 'Add some feature')
- 4. Push to the branch (git push origin my-new-feature)
- 5. Create a new Pull Request

Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the work shall be licensed as above without any additional terms or conditions.

If you would like to contribute financial support for the project, please contact John Lindsay. We also welcome contributions in the form of media exposure. If you have written an article or blog about *White-boxTools* please let us know about it.

9. Reporting Bugs

WhiteboxTools is distributed as is and without warranty of suitability for application. If you encounter flaws with the software (i.e. bugs) please report the issue. Providing a detailed description of the conditions under which the bug occurred will help to identify the bug. *Use the Issues tracker on GitHub to report issues with the software and to request feature enchancements.* Please do not email Dr. Lindsay directly with bugs.

10. Known Issues and Limitations

- There is limited support for reading, writing, or analyzing vector data yet. Plans include native support for the ESRI Shapefile format and possibly GeoJSON data.
- The LAZ compressed LiDAR data format is currently unsupported although zipped LAS files (.zip) are.
- · There is no support for reading waveform data contained within or associated with LAS files.
- File directories cannot contain apostrophes (', e.g. /John's data/) as they will be interpreted in the arguments array as single quoted strings.
- The Python scripts included with **WhiteboxTools** require Python 3. They will not work with Python 2, which is frequently the default Python version installed on many systems.

11. License

The **WhiteboxTools** library is distributed under the MIT license, a permissive open-source (free software) license.

The MIT License (MIT)

Copyright (c) 2017-2018 John Lindsay

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

12. Frequently Asked Questions

12.1 Do I need Whitebox GAT to use WhiteboxTools?

No you do not. You can call the tools contained within *WhiteboxTools* completely independent from the *Whitebox GAT* user interface using a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) approach. In fact, you can interact with the tools using Python scripting or directly, using a terminal application (command prompt). See *Interacting With* WhiteboxTools* From the Command Prompt* for further details.

12.2 How do I request a tool be added?

Eventually most of the tools in *Whitebox GAT* will be ported over to *WhiteboxTools* and all new tools will be added to this library as well. Naturally, this will take time. The order by which tools are ported is partly a function of ease of porting, existing infrastructure (i.e. raster and LiDAR tools will be ported first since their is currently no support in the library for vector I/O), and interest. If you are interested in making a tool a higher priority for porting, email John Lindsay.

12.3 Can WhiteboxTools be incorporated into other software and open-source GIS projects?

WhiteboxTools was developed with the open-source GIS Whitebox GAT in mind. That said, the tools can be accessed independently and so long as you abide by the terms of the MIT license, there is no reason why other software and GIS projects cannot use WhiteboxTools as well. In fact, this was one of the motivating factors for creating the library in the first place. Feel free to use WhiteboxTools as the geospatial analysis engine in your open-source software project.

12.4 What platforms does WhiteboxTools support?

WhiteboxTools is developed using the Rust programming language, which supports a wide variety of platforms including MS Windows, MacOS, and Linux operating systems and common chip architectures. Interestingly, Rust also supports mobile platforms, and WhiteboxTools should therefore be capable of targeting (although no testing has been completed in this regard to date). Nearly all development and testing of the software is currently carried out on MacOS and we cannot guarantee a bug-free performance on other platforms. In particularly, MS Windows is the most different from the other platforms and is therefore the most likely to encounter platform-specific bugs. If you encounter bugs in the software, please consider reporting an issue using the GitHub support for issue-tracking.

12.5 What are the system requirements?

The answer to this question depends strongly on the type of analysis and data that you intend to process. However, generally we find performance to be optimal with a recommended minimum of 8-16GB of memory (RAM), a modern multi-core processor (e.g. 64-bit i5 or i7), and an solid-state-drive (SSD). It is likely that *WhiteboxTools* will have satisfactory performance on lower-spec systems if smaller datasets are being processed. Because *WhiteboxTools* reads entire raster datasets into system memory (for optimal performance, and in recognition that modern systems have increasingly larger amounts of fast RAM), this tends to be the limiting factor for the upper-end of data size successfully processed by the library. 64-bit operating systems are recommended and extensive testing has not been carried out on 32-bit OSs. See "What platforms does WhiteboxTools support?" for further details on supported platforms.

12.6 Are pre-compiled executables of WhiteboxTools available?

Pre-compiled binaries for *WhiteboxTools* can be downloaded from the *Geomorphometry and Hydrogeomatics Research Group* software web site for various supported operating systems. If you need binaries for other operating systems/system architectures, you will need to compile the executable from source files. See Installation for details.

12.7 Why is WhiteboxTools programmed in Rust?

I spent a long time evaluating potential programming language for future development efforts for the *Whitebox GAT* project. My most important criterion for a language was that it compile to native code, rather than target the Java virtual machine (JVM). I have been keen to move Whitebox GAT away from Java because of some of the challenges that supporting the JVM has included for many Whitebox users. The language should be fast and productive–Java is already quite fast, but if I am going to change development languages, I would like a performance boost. Furthermore, given that many, though not all, of the algorithms used for geospatial analysis scale well with concurrent (parallel) implementations, I favoured languages that offered easy and safe concurrent programming. Although many would consider C/C++ for this work, I was looking for a modern and safe language. Fortunately, we are living through a renaissance period in programming language development and there are many newer languages that fit the bill nicely. Over

the past two years, I considered each of Go, Rust, D, Nim, and Crystal for Whitebox development and ultimately decided on Rust. [See *GoSpatial* and *lidario*.]

Each of the languages I examined has its own advantages of disadvantages, so why Rust? It's a combination of factors that made it a compelling option for this project. Compared with many on the list, Rust is a mature language with a vibrant user community. Like C/C++, it's a high-performance and low-level language that allows for complete control of the system. However, Rust is also one of the safest languages, meaning that I can be confident that *WhiteboxTools* will not contain common bugs, such as memory use-after-release, memory leaks and race conditions within concurrent code. Importantly, and quite uniquely, this safety is achieved in the Rust language without the use of a garbage collector (automatic memory management). Garbage collectors can be great, but they do generally come with a certain efficiency trade-off that Rust does not have. The other main advantage of Rust's approach to memory management is that it allows for a level of interaction with scripting languages (e.g. Python) that is quite difficult to do in garbage collected languages. Although **WhiteboxTools** is currently set up to use an automation approach to interacting with Python code that calls it, I like the fact that I have the option to create a *WhiteboxTools* shared library.

Not everything with Rust is perfect however. It is still a very young language and there are many pieces still missing from its ecosystem. Furthermore, it is not the easiest language to learn, particularly for people who are inexperienced with programming. This may limit my ability to attract other programmers to the Whitebox project, which would be unfortunate. However, overall, Rust was the best option for this particular application.

12.8 Do I need Rust installed on my computer to run WhiteboxTools?

No, you would only need Rust installed if you were compiling the *WhiteboxTools* codebase from source files.

12.9 How does WhiteboxTools' design philosophy differ?

Whitebox GAT is frequently praised for its consistent design and ease of use. Like Whitebox GAT, WhiteboxTools follows the convention of one tool for one function. For example, in WhiteboxTools assigning the links in a stream channel network their Horton, Strahler, Shreve, or Hack stream ordering numbers requires running separate tools (i.e. HortonStreamOrder, StrahlerStreamOrder, ShreveStreamMagnitude, and HackStreamOrder). By contrast, in GRASS GIS¹ and ArcGIS single tools (i.e. the r.stream.order and Stream Order tools respectively) can be configured to output different channel ordering schemes. The WhiteboxTools design is intended to simplify the user experience and to make it easier to find the right tool for a task. With more specific tool names that are reflective of their specific purposes, users are not as reliant on reading help documentation to identify the tool for the task at hand. Similarly, it is not uncommon for tools in other GIS to have multiple outputs. For example, in GRASS GIS the r.slope.aspect tool can be configured to output slope, aspect, profile curvature, plan curvature, and several other common terrain surface derivatives. Based on the one tool for one function design approach of WhiteboxTools, multiple outputs are indicative that a tool should be split into different, more specific tools. Are you more likely to go to a tool named r.slope.aspect or TangentialCurvature when you want to create a tangential curvature raster from

a DEM? If you're new to the software and are unfamiliar with it, probably the later is more obvious. The *WhiteboxTools* design approach also has the added benefit of simplifying the documentation for tools. The one downside to this design approach, however, is that it results (or will result) in a large number of tools, often with significant overlap in function.

¹ NOTE: It's not my intent to criticize GRASS GIS, as I deeply respect the work that the GRASS developers have contributed. Rather, I am contrasting the consequences of *WhiteboxTools'* design philosophy to that of other GIS.